TCG PC Client Platform
TPM Profile (PTP) Specification

Family "2.0"

Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

May 22, 2017

Contact: admin@trustedcomputinggroup.org

TCG PUBLISHED

TCG

Disclaimers, Notices, and License Terms

Contents

List of Figures

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page v
May 22, 2017

List of Tables

Corrections and Comments

TCG members may send comments to: techquestions@trustedcomputinggroup.org

TPM Dependency and Requirements

A TPM claiming adherence to this specification SHALL be compliant with the *TPM Library Specification; Family 2.0; Level 00; Revision 01.38* or later.

1   TPM Requirements General Introduction

The TCG Main specifications define a TPM for use on any generic platform. Platform-specific functionality is defined in platform specifications such as this document.

1. This document details the additional features that SHALL be implemented by a TPM for a PC Client platform.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, the features in this specification are based on the *TPM Library Specification Family 2.0; Level 00; Revision 01.38* parts 1 through 3. The term TPM Library Specification is used to refer to these documents and the features they specify.

1.1   Terminology

The following terms are used as defined below throughout the document. All other terms are defined in the PC Client Implementation Specification.

HASH_START: A successful write to the TPM's TPM_HASH_START interface register (FIFO) or the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_START field (CRB).

HASH_DATA: A successful write to the TPM's TPM_HASH_DATA interface register (FIFO) or the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_DATA field (CRB).

HASH_END: A successful write to the TPM's TPM_HASH_END interface register (FIFO) or the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_END field (CRB).

TPM Device Reset: the assertion of the _TPM_INIT hardware signal.

Platform Software: the source of the command, which may be an operating system driver or an application.

Platform Hardware: platform components including chipsets and associated microcode, and microprocessors and associated microcode.

S-CRTM: code supplied by the platform manufacturer, as a subset of platform firmware that initializes and configures platform components and is the portion of platform firmware that defines the initial trust boundary.

Operating System, or **OS:** generic term for an operating system and its collection of drivers and services.

Static OS: the operating system that is loaded during the initial boot sequence of the platform from its platform reset.

Dynamic OS: an operating system that is loaded by the Static OS. There may be more than one Dynamic OS per Host Platform but only one can be loaded at a time. The Dynamic OS can be unloaded keeping the Static OS resident and operational.

Read: a transaction where the calling entity requests and receives data from a specified register or buffer in the TPM.

Write: a transaction where the calling entity sends data to a register or buffer in the TPM.

PC Client Platform Implementation Specification: the combination of the *PC Client Platform Implementation Specification*, the *PC Client ACPI Specification*, and the *PC Client Physical Presence Interface Specification*.

The following conventions are used to represent values of fields in this document:

Any field which contains a value is represented in hexadecimal format (e.g. B0h).

Any field which contains a bitfield is represented in binary format (e.g. 0001b).

1.2   Division of Documentation

45   The PC Client Specifications are divided into two documents:

1. This specification, the *PC Client Specific Platform TPM Profile for TPM 2.0*, discusses the specifics regarding the requirements of the TPM for PC Client but only the requirements for the TPM itself, not the requirements for a platform incorporating the TPM. This document discusses the details of what interfaces and protocols are
50   used to communicate with the TPM and the platform-specific set of requirements. This document includes the definitions of the items identified in the TPM Library specification as "Platform Specific" such as the minimum number of PCRs required and NV Storage available. The target audience for this document is the TPM manufacturers but platform manufacturers should review it as well in order to
55   understand security constraints for a platform incorporating the   TPM.

2. The *PC Client Platform Implementation Specification* specifies the requirements for the TPM as it is implemented on the platform. Issues such as TPM, platform and bios provisioning, usage of TPM to record measurements of platform code, PCR mapping, functional interfaces, and interfaces are discussed. The target audience
60   for this document is platform manufacturers.

2   Summary of TPM Features to Support the PC Client

2.1   Register Definitions

This specification identifies the various registers that allow communication between the TPM and platform hardware and software.

2.2   Locality

 "Locality" is an assertion to the TPM that a command's source is associated with a particular component. Locality can be thought of as a hardware-based authorization. The TPM is not actually aware of the nature of the relationship between the locality and the component. The ability to reset and extend notwithstanding, it is important to note that, from a PCR "usage" perspective, there is no hierarchical relationship between different localities. The TPM simply enforces locality restrictions on TPM assets (such as PCR or SEALed blobs). For example, PCR attribute settings may allow a component associated with Locality 4 to reset PCR associated with Locality 2; and a SEALed blob may use an authorization policy to allow it to be accessed from locality 2 but not from locality 4.

The protection and separation of the localities (and therefore the association with the associated components) is entirely the responsibility of the platform components. Platform components, including the OS, may provide the separation of localities using protection mechanisms such as virtual memory or paging.

For the FIFO and CRB interfaces, assertion of locality is done by interacting with the TPM at specified blocks of address ranges. Each locality is assigned an address range, and, when a command is received at the address range associated with a locality, the TPM sets the TPM's internal *localityModifier* value to the indicated locality value.

Note on convention for using the term locality: When referring to localities in general the term locality will be lower case (i.e., starts with an 'l'.) When discussing a specific locality, the term locality will be capitalized (i.e., Locality 0 does something.) When using a phrase such as: "executes at Locality 0", this means the command is sent to the memory-mapped TPM addresses defined for Locality 0, and the platform components that enforce access to the TPM have authorized that command be sent from that component to that address.

The PC Client TPM interface defines the attributes and use of five localities (Localities 0 – 4). The nominal association of these localities is:

Locality 4: Usually associated with the CPU executing microcode. This is used by the D-CRTM to establish the Dynamic RTM.

Note: Reference the *PC Client Platform Firmware Profile for TPM 2.0 Systems* for the definition of Dynamic RTM.

Locality 3: Auxiliary components. Use of this is optional and, if used, it is implementation dependent.

Locality 2: Dynamically Launched OS (Dynamic OS) "runtime" environment.

Locality 1: An environment for use by the Dynamic OS.

Locality 0: The Static RTM, its chain of trust and its environment.

Note: These associations are arbitrary and depend on the system implementation.

2.3   Interface Type

This specification defines a new software interface to the TPM for TPM 2.0, in addition to the FIFO interface. This interface, the Command Response Buffer Interface, has been defined so that it may be implemented in a TPM which also contains a FIFO interface. The CRB Interface is intended to be physical-bus agnostic, so that it could be implemented on an LPC or SPI interface, as specified in this specification or on another physical interface not specified. In order for a TPM to be compliant with this specification, however, it is required to implement at least one of the interfaces defined by this specification.

The physical register spaces for both FIFO and CRB are specified in Section 5.5 TPM Register Space. Register space with functions common to both interfaces is specified in Section 5.7.1 Interface-Agnostic functions. The behavior of the CRB Interface is specified in Section 5.7.3 CRB Interface Requirements. In the subsequent sections, functionality which is interface-independent precedes the interface-specific functionality. Where a function is common to both interfaces, but there are interface-specific requirements, the requirements are documented in the interface-specific section. For example, the concepts of locality are common to both interfaces, but the mechanisms to invoke locality are interface specific.

2.4   Locality Resettable PCRs

Resettable PCR, with the exception of PCR 16 and PCR 23, are a set of PCR for use by the Dynamic RTM and its chain of trust. Access to these PCR is controlled by the various locality indicators.

2.5   Minimum Amount of NV Storage

The *TPM 2.0 Library Specification* provides for a general-purpose area of non-volatile storage for use by the platforms as well as for storage of persistent objects. This is different from TPM 1.2, in that the non-volatile storage for persistent objects was TPM vendor implementation specific. The definition of this area is the purview of the various platform specific specifications. This specification defines the minimum amount required for the PC Client.

2.6   Minimum Number of PCRs

The *TPM 2.0 Library Specification* allows the platform specific specifications to require a minimum number of PCRs and to allocate usage for them based on the needs and the environment of the platform. Additionally, the *TPM 2.0 Library Specification* allows the platform specific specification to define whether authorization is required to extend or reset PCRs. As PC Client platforms have stringent boot time requirements, this specification does not use authorization for operations on PCR's which will be used in the platform boot process (TPM2_PCR_Extend()).

140 # 3   TPM Attributes

3.1   PC Client TPM Minimums and Maximums

The *TPM Library Specification* allows a variety of implementations to be defined from the superset of functionality contained within the library. This section defines the minimum and maximum requirements for a PC Client TPM of those attributes in the
145 Library specification that are left to the Platform specification to define.

NOTE 1: Table 1 contains the names of the property types, as defined in the TPM Library Specification Part 2, Section TPM_PT, which must be specified by a platform profile. Table 1 defines the value returned by a TPM2_Get_Capability query to each PT name for a PC Client TPM.

150 **NOTE 2:** The values stated in Table 1 Returned Value may be greater than the minimum or less than the maximum number indicated. If a number does not have a "min" or "max" designation, it is defined to be exactly that number.

A TPM designed to be conformant to this specification SHALL support the minimum and maximum requirements defined in Table 1 — TPM Requirements

155 **Table 1 — TPM Requirements**

Capability Name	Returned Value	Description
TPM_PT_HR_TRANSIENT_MIN	3 min	The minimum number of transient objects that can be held in the TPM RAM
TPM_PT_HR_PERSISTENT_MIN	7 min	The minimum number of persistent objects that can be held in TPM NV Memory. When calculating this number, the following example allocations were used: • 3 slots intended for root keys (PPK, SRK, 1 EKs) • 3 slots intended for OS/application usage • 1 slot intended for the platform hierarchy
TPM_PT_HR_LOADED_MIN	3 min	The minimum number of authorization sessions that can be held in TPM RAM
TPM_PT_ACTIVE_SESSIONS_MAX	64 min	The minimum number of authorization sessions that may be active concurrently.
TPM_PT_PCR_COUNT	24 min	the number of PCR implemented in a bank
TPM_PT_PCR_SELECT_MIN	3 min	The minimum number of octets in a TPMS_PCR_SELECT.*sizeOfSelect*
TPM_PT_NV_COUNTERS_MAX	Defined by vendor	The maximum number of NV Indexes that are allowed to have the TPMA_NV_COUNTER attribute SET Note: See Section 3.6.1 for PC Specific requirements.
TPM_PT_NV_INDEX_MAX	1600 min	The maximum decimal size of an NV Index data area **Note:** This is the size of an X.509 certificate signed with an RSA key and its authorization. The size specified here is the smallest maximum size a TPM vendor must support. TPM vendors may support larger sizes. The specific number and type of NV indices mandated by this specification is defined in Section 3.6.1.
TPM_PT_PS_FAMILY_INDICATOR	0x00000001	PC Client Platform TPM Specification Family
TPM_PT_PS_LEVEL	0x00000000	PC Client Platform TPM Specification Level 00
TPM_PT_PS_REVISION	0x00000103	The revision of this specification

Capability Name	Returned Value	Description
TPM_PT_PS_DAY_OF_YEAR	0x00000000	The platform-specific specification day of year. Not used by PC Client WG
TPM_PT_PS_YEAR	0x00000000	The platform-specific specification year. Not used by PC Client WG
TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_1	Defined by vendor	This field may be defined as an ASCII string no more than 4 characters. Unused characters SHALL be NULL
TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_2	Defined by vendor	This field may be defined as an ASCII string no more than 4 characters. Unused characters SHALL be NULL. This field is concatenated to TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_1
TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_3	Defined by vendor	This field may be defined as an ASCII string no more than 4 characters. Unused characters SHALL be NULL. This field is concatenated to TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_2
TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_4	Defined by vendor	This field may be defined as an ASCII string no more than 4 characters. Unused characters SHALL be NULL. This field is concatenated to TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_3
TPM_PT_VENDOR_TPM_TYPE	0x00000000	Reserved not used.
TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_1	Defined by vendor	The upper 16 bits of this field SHALL contain the TPM major firmware version (Version Major) The lower 16 bits of this field SHALL contain the TPM minor firmware version (Version Minor)
TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_2	Defined by vendor	This field MAY be used as an extension to TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_1. If not used, this field SHALL be 0.
NUM_POLICY_PCR_GROUP	0	number of PCR groups that have individual policies
NUM_AUTHVALUE_PCR_GROUP	0	number of PCR groups that have individual authorization values
NV_MEMORY_SIZE	6962 min	size of NV memory in decimal bytes

3.2   PC Client Algorithms

All algorithm identifiers listed in Table 2 are mandatory for a PC Client TPM. Some algorithms listed below are not explicitly selectable as they are supporting algorithms needed for a higher level function, e.g. TPM_ALG_ECSCHNORR is required for TPM_ALG_ECDSA. Algorithms not explicitly listed are optional and may be required if an optional command is implemented by the TPM. A hash algorithm for the purposes of this specification is defined to be an algorithm with a Type limited to "H" in the TCG Algorithm Registry.

1. To be compliant to this specification:

    a. The TPM SHALL support algorithms listed in

    b. Table 2 as Mandatory (M),

2. The TPM SHOULD support algorithms listed in

    a. Table 2 as Recommended (R).

3. A TPM MAY support algorithms listed in

    a. Table 2 as Optional (O).

4. Algorithms listed as Deprecated (D) MAY be removed in future.

Table 2 — PC Client TPM Algorithms

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 7
May 22, 2017

Algorithm ID	M/R/O /D	Comments
TPM_ALG_RSA	M	support for 2048-bit keys is required; support for 1024-bits keys is not recommended
TPM_ALG_TDES	O	Per SP800-57 revision 3, 2-key TDES is not allowed after 2014. Not Recommended for usage. Three-key TDES is Recommended.
TPM_ALG_SHA1	M/D	This is a hash algorithm

Required for legacy support, but may be removed in future. |
TPM_ALG_HMAC	M	
TPM_ALG_AES	M	Support for 128- and 256-bit keys and TPM_ALG_CFB at a minimum. TPM_ALG_ECB should not be used
TPM_ALG_MGF1	M	
TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH	M	
TPM_ALG_XOR	M	
TPM_ALG_SHA256	M	This is a hash algorithm
TPM_ALG_SHA384	O	This is a hash algorithm
TPM_ALG_SHA512	O	This is a hash algorithm
TPM_ALG_NULL	M	
TPM_ALG_SM3_256	O	This is a hash algorithm
TPM_ALG_SM4	O	
TPM_ALG_RSASSA	M	
TPM_ALG_RSAES	M	
TPM_ALG_RSAPSS	M	
TPM_ALG_OAEP	M	
TPM_ALG_ECDSA	M	
TPM_ALG_ECDH	M	
TPM_ALG_ECDAA	M	Note – change to implementation in TPM Library Specification 1.35
TPM_ALG_SM2	O	
TPM_ALG_ECSCHNORR	M	Note – change to implementation in TPM Library Specification 1.35
TPM_ALG_ECC	M	See Section 3.3 for required curves
TPM_ALG_ECMQV	O	
TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER	M	
TPM_ALG_CAMELLIA	O	

175 ## 3.3   PC Client Curves

1. To be compliant to this specification:

    a. The TPM SHALL implement the curves listed in Table 3 as Mandatory (M).

    b. The TPM SHOULD implement the curves listed in Table 3 as Recommended (R).

    c. A TPM MAY implement the curves listed in Table 3 as Optional (O).

180 **Table 3 — TPM Mandatory Curves**

Curve Identifier	M/R/O/	Comments
TPM_ECC_NIST_P256	M	
TPM_ECC_BN_P256	M	to support anonymous attestation
TPM_ECC_NIST_P384	O	

3.4   Physical Presence

Physical Presence is not required for a PC Client TPM to be compliant to this specification.

3.5   TPM Handles, Objects and Contexts

185 This section contains miscellaneous items which the TPM 2.0 Library Specification recommends Platform Work Groups define or constrain in the Platform Specific Profiles.

1. The TPM SHALL implement a large maximum value for the objectContextID counter so that this field never overflows, causing the TPM to go into Failure Mode.

190 2. The TPM SHALL implement a mechanism to reuse Object Handles.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT return TPM_RC_OBJECT_HANDLES.

3.6   Non-volatile Storage

The non-volatile (NV) Storage provides a small general-purpose data storage area for persistent data. The TPM provides the ability to add access control to this area for
195 security or privacy. This area is organized and addressed using indices.

While this area provides a general-purpose storage area for interoperability, it also provides a storage location for persistent objects used by the TPM. To accommodate storage of persistent objects and Certificates for some of these objects, some index values are reserved. These values are defined in the *Registry of Reserved TPM 2.0*
200 *Handles and Localities*. A reserved index value is an index which has been defined by TCG, but for which there is no requirement to implement the value, e.g. the Endorsement Key Credential index. A reserved index value, if not implemented must not be used for a different purpose than defined.

The TPM will enforce any defined attributes for the NV storage. However, with the
205 exception of the NV Storage used for GPIO and counters, the contents of the NV Storage are opaque and are not in any way interpreted or enforced by the TPM.

TPM 2.0 allows for NV Indices to be defined for platform use, by the platform hierarchy, in addition to the NV Indices defined for use by the Owner. Platform indices may only be created using Platform authorization. Owner indices are created using Owner authorization. Platform NV is distinguished from Owner NV by an attribute in the NV Public area, TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE. If this attribute is set, the NV Index was created using Platform authorization.

3.6.1   NV Storage Size

Providing an adequate minimum amount of storage space is difficult to predict based on future and unspecified use of the platform. However, it is prudent to provide for some minimum and predictable amount of storage to allow processes to budget their allocation. For this reason, this specification defines the minimum amount of storage and number of indices that a TPM must implement.

This specification does not define how a TPM vendor must organize the TPM's NV Storage. The TPM vendor may organize the TPM's NV Storage in such a way that the total amount of storage, minus the overhead required to implement individual indices, is allocated dynamically.

However the TPM is implemented, it is expected to provide flexibility in allocation of indices and storage allocation to the indices. The TPM is expected to provide a malloc()-style allocation of the NV storage area rather than provide a fixed size for each index. For example, a caller could define 9 indices of 1 byte each and a single index that consumes the remaining available space. Alternatively, a caller could define 10 indices of equal size. A TPM with a flexible implementation would allow either extreme.

The minimum NV storage is defined as the amount of NV the TPM provides prior to any platform manufacturer or end user provisioning of the TPM. The TPM Library Specification treats all non-volatile entities as part of the same pool of NV memory. Depending on implementation, TPM vendors may include persistently held keys and certificates in the same pool of NV memory defined for NV indices. The minimum amount of NV Storage is calculated based on the mandatory supported items defined using TPM2_NV_DefineSpace which consume an NV index, inclusive of the overhead. The mandatory minimum size does not include storage of any other persistent object, data or code that requires or consumes non-volatile memory. If a TPM vendor includes persistent storage of objects in the same pool of NV memory as NV Indices, the TPM vendor will need to account for the size of the objects and overhead in calculating the required size of their NV memory pool.

1. The TPM SHALL provide a minimum of 6962 (dec) bytes of NV Storage.

2. If the TPM is pre-provisioned with EK Certificates, it SHALL be provisioned with EK Certificates for each supported asymmetric algorithm with an EK Credential template, as defined in the TCG EK Credential Profile for TPM Family 2.0; level 0, Specification Version 12.

   NOTE: This specification does not require pre-provisioned EK's.

   NOTE: Reserved handles for the EK Certificate and other NV Indices related to the EK, such as EK template, are defined in the TCG Registry of Reserved TPM 2.0 Handles and Localities.

   a. Pre-provisioned EK certificates SHALL be identified by handles in the range of 0x01C00000-0x01C07FFF.

b. The index SHALL be defined as an ordinary index.

255

c. NV Index attributes TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE, TPMA_NV_GLOBALLOCK, TPMA_NV_ORDERLY, TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR, and TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR SHALL be CLEAR.

d. NV Index attributes TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE, TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD, TPMA_NV_NO_DA, and TPMA_NV_PPWRITE SHALL be SET.

260

e. All other NV Index attributes MAY be SET.

f. The authorization value for the EK certificate index SHALL be a NULL Auth as defined in the *TPM 2.0 Library Specification*, Part 1, *Terms and Abbreviations*.

g. The authorization policy for the EK certificate index SHALL be an Empty Buffer as defined in the *TPM 2.0 Library Specification*, Part 1, *Terms and Abbreviations*.

265

h. The hash algorithm used for the EK certificate signature SHOULD be TPM_ALG_SHA256 with a digest size of 256 bits.

3. The TPM SHALL support a minimum of 6 NV Indices with the attribute TPM_NT_COUNTER set to 1. Additionally, two of these counters SHALL support TPMA_NV_ORDERLY set to 1.

270

NOTE: The availability of NV Counters is dependent on the availability of free NV space. If NV Indices have been defined, a TPM may not support the full 6 NV Counters.

4. The TPM SHALL support a minimum of 2 NV Indices with either the attribute TPM_NT_PIN_FAIL or TPM_NT_PIN_PASS set to 1.

275

NOTE: The availability of Pin Pass or Pin Fail indices is dependent on the availability of free NV space. If NV Indices have been defined a TPM may not support the full 2 Pin Pass/Pin Fail indices.

3.6.2   General Purpose I/O (GPIO)

280

General purpose I/O (GPIO) provides an optional interface between the TPM's command interface and an external device. The actual use and protocol of the signal is implementation specific and is not specified by TCG.

The TPM's command interface accesses the GPIO pins using the NV Storage interface. This is much like a "memory-mapped" I/O in other architectures. This specification only defines the routing of the GPIO index to the GPIO pin.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 11
May 22, 2017

285   Because GPIO can be used for security or privacy functions, it must not be open, by default, for public access. For this reason, it is required that the NV Storage area that is mapped to the GPIO be "defined" like any other NV Storage area prior to allowing its use. GPIO indices may be defined by a platform manufacturer or by the owner of a system. The system owner would act as the TPM Owner. When defining the index,
290   the Owner may elect to assign access rights per the normal attributes. If the TPM Owner is removed, the area returns to undefined and must be defined again before use. The reason for this behavior is that the new TPM Owner may have different security and privacy requirements for this GPIO. If defined by the platform manufacturer, the index would be expected to remain even in the presence of a new
295   owner. An example where this might be used would be in a system where the GPIO is used as to control an indicator when certain conditions attested to by the TPM are true.

       The range reserved for GPIO is not specific to a particular platform. It is, therefore, a requirement that software or other platform processes using GPIOs understand the
300   nature of the platform before using it (i.e., which NV Storage Index is associated with which GPIO and the purpose of the GPIO on that particular platform).

       Note that the pin-out specified in Section 8.1 TPM Packaging is only recommended and is not mandatory. TPMs are allowed to be implemented using any packaging. However, if this packaging is chosen, the pins, including the location of the GPIO pins,
305   are mandatory. If this packaging is not used, the TPM manufacturer must provide documentation to the platform manufacturer indicating which pin is used as a GPIO pin.

       Implementation of this section is optional; but if implemented, it MUST be done in the manner specified in this section.

310   **3.6.2.1   Reserved NV Storage Indices for GPIO**

       The following reserved NV handles are normatively assigned by TCG in the Registry of Reserved TPM Handles and Localities.

       If implemented, GPIO pins SHALL be mapped to NV Indices in the range of 0x01C40000 to 0x01C4000F, one index per one GPIO.

315 ## 3.7   PCR Requirements

This section specifies the number and attributes of the set of PCRs required for a PC Client Platform. The purpose for specifying this is to establish common and expected behavior for both platform hardware and software.

320 The TPM 2.0 Library Specification allows TPM vendors to implement PCR in NV. Software which performs multiple extends to PCRs in a boot cycle could subject the TPM PCR to NV wear-out. It is therefore recommended to use RAM for PCRs. If a TPM uses NV for PCR then the vendor is strongly recommended to provide a cache for the most recently used PCRs.

325 The TPM2_PCR_Allocate command is used to assign HASH algorithms for PCR banks. It is also used to allocate PCR within a bank. The PC Client Specific Platform Firmware Profile for TPM 2.0 Systems defines the requirements for a platform manufacturer to allocate the necessary number of PCR for a PC Client TPM. It is not expected that a TPM vendor will produce a TPM that returns an error code if platform firmware does not allocate the PFP defined number of PCR.

330 1. A conformant TPM SHALL allow an allocation of a minimum of 24 PCRs, 0-23, within all allocated banks. A conformant TPM MAY support more than one bank of PCRs.

2. A conformant TPM MAY support allocation of fewer than PCR 0-23 in any bank, or the TPM MAY return TPM_RC_NO_RESULT.

335 3. A conformant TPM SHALL support SHA-256 (0x000B) and SHA-1 (0x0004). The TPM MAY support additional Hash algorithms.

    a. If the TPM supports only one bank of PCRs,

        i.   The default Hash Algorithm ID for the PCR SHALL be defined to be 0x000B (SHA-256).

340   ii. The TPM SHALL support allocation of this bank for any support Hash algorithm.

    b. If the TPM supports multiple banks of PCRs:

        i.   The TPM SHALL enable by default the required Hash algorithms.

        ii. If the TPM supports additional Hash algorithms, the TPM SHALL support
345   the full allocation of PCR within each allocated bank, as defined in normative 1, for any combination of allocated algorithms for the supported banks of PCRs.

4. If a TPM is implemented with more than 24 PCRs in a bank, the attributes of the additional PCRs are not defined by this specification.

350 5. A conformant TPM SHALL support an Empty Auth as the authorization value for all PCRs

6. A conformant TPM SHALL support an Empty Policy as the authorization policy for all PCRs.

7. The optional TPM2_SetAuthPolicy and TPM2_SetAuthValue commands, if
355   implemented, SHALL return TPM_RC_VALUE.

8. For this specification, the DRTM PCR SHALL be defined to be PCR 17 and the H-CRTM PCR SHALL be defined to be PCR 0.

3.7.1   PCR Attributes

PC Client TPM PCRs are defined to enable a PC Client TPM to support DRTM. See
360   Section 4.2.1 <u>DRTM Execution Sequence.</u>

Note that since the hardware that performs the DRTM sequence at Locality 4 is not capable of doing TPM2_PCR_Reset(), the TPM_PT_PCR_RESET_L4 attribute is repurposed to indicate the initial state of the PCR (0 or -1) and to indicate which PCR are set to 0 by a successful DRTM Sequence.

365   1. For a PC Client TPM, a value in the "Reset by TPM2_PCR_Reset for Locality = x" column (column 8) in Table 4 of:

     a. N (No): means that the TPM2_PCR_Reset command SHALL NOT reset the indicated PCR.

     b. Y (Yes): means that the TPM2_PCR_Reset command SHALL reset the indicated
370   PCR.

   2. For a PC Client TPM, a value in the "Reset by DRTM Event Locality = x" column (column 7) in Table 4 of:

     a. N (No): means that the DRTM Sequence SHALL NOT reset the indicated PCR,

     b. Y(Yes): means that the DRTM Sequence SHALL reset the indicated PCR.

375   3. For a PC Client TPM, for each PCR, the value in the "Extended by TPM2_PCR_Extend Locality = x" column (Column 9) in Table 4 of:

     a. N (No): means that the TPM2_PCR_Extend or TPM2_PCR_Event command SHALL NOT extend the indicated PCR.

     b. Y (Yes): means that the TPM2_PCR_Extend or TPM2_PCR_Event command
380   SHALL extend the indicated PCR.

   4. For a PC Client TPM, the TPM SHALL return the values defined in the "Value of TPM_PT_PCR_RESET_LX" column (Table 4, column 10) in response to a TPM2_GetCapability command.

   5. The initialization value for each PCR is defined in Section 3.7.2, Table 5.

385

Table 4 — PCR Attributes

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
PCR Index	Alias	TPM_PT_PCR_SAVE	TPM_PT_PCR_AUTH	TPM_PT_PCR_POLICY	TPM_PT_PCR_NO_INCREMENT	Reset by DRTM Event Locality = x X=4,3,2,1,0	Reset by TPM2_PCR_Reset Locality = x X=4,3,2,1,0	Extended by TPM2_PCR_Extend Locality = x X= 4,3,2,1,0	Value of TPM_PT_PCR_RESET_Lx Locality = x X= 4,3,2,1,0
0 – 15	Static RTM	1	0	0	0	N,N,N,N,N	N,N,N,N,N	Y,Y,Y,Y,Y	0,0,0,0,0
16	Debug	0	0	0	1	N,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,Y,Y	Y,Y,Y,Y,Y	0,1,1,1,1
17	Locality 4	0	0	0	0	Y,N,N,N,N	N,N,N,N,N	Y,Y,Y,N,N	1,0,0,0,0
18	Locality 3	0	0	0	0	Y,N,N,N,N	N,N,N,N,N	Y,Y,Y,N,N	1,0,0,0,0
19	Locality 2	0	0	0	0	Y,N,N,N,N	N,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,N,N	1,0,0,0,0
20	Locality 1	0	0	0	0	Y,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,N,N	N,Y,Y,Y,N	1,1,1,0,0
21	Dynamic OS Controlled	0	0	0	1	Y,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,N,N	N,N,Y,N,N	1,1,1,0,0
22	Dynamic OS Controlled	0	0	0	1	Y,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,N,N	N,N,Y,N,N	1,1,1,0,0
23	Application Specific	0	0	0	1	N,N,N,N,N	N,Y,Y,Y,Y	Y,Y,Y,Y,Y	0,1,1,1,1

Family "2.0"

Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED

Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 15

May 22, 2017

3.7.2   PCR Initial and Reset Values

390 The contents of the cells in Table 5 are the value to which each of the PCRs is initialized prior to being transformed by the command or sequence called out in the title of each column.   The actual transformation is defined in the *TPM Library Specification.*

Within the context of specifying the Reset Value for PCRs, the value -1 is defined to be the same size, in bytes, of the digest for the supported Hash Algorithm ID with all bits
395 set to the value of 1.

The column "No H-CRTM Sequence" indicates that no H-CRTM sequence was initiated prior to the TPM receiving the TPM2_Startup (CLEAR) indication.   The column "H-CRTM Sequence" indicates that an H-CRTM sequence was initiated prior to the TPM receiving the TPM2_Startup (CLEAR) indication.

400 **Table 5 — PCR Initial and Reset Values**

PCR Index	TPM2_Startup(CLEAR)		HASH_END (DRTM Sequence)	TPM2_PCR_Reset
	No H-CRTM Sequence	H-CRTM Sequence		
0	Locality Indicator[1]	Updated per H-CRTM sequence[2]	NC	NC
1-15	0	0	NC	NC
16	0	0	NC	0
17	-1	-1	Updated per DRTM sequence	NC
18-19	-1	-1	0	NC
20-22	-1	-1	0	0
23	0	0	NC	0
Note 1: Locality Indicator is locality at which TPM2_Startup(CLEAR) is received.				
Note 2: See Section 4.2.2 <u>H-CRTM Execution Sequence.</u>				
<u>NC = No Change</u>				

Page 16
May 22, 2017

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

3.8   Power Management

While power management of a device is allowed by the standard which specifies the LPC interface (if implemented by the TPM), the TPM is designed to be either fully functional (device power management state D0) or not functional (device power management state D3). In practical applications of TPM, power management of the TPM has no real meaning. The TCG specifications define TPM behavior and functions to simplify the TPM's interactions with the platform's components including the software. The TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) and TPM2_Startup commands were created as a mechanism for the platform's software and BIOS to communicate entry into and exit from the D3 Power State. The TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) command allows a Static OS to indicate to the TPM that the platform may enter a low power state where the TPM will be required to enter into the D3 power state. The use of the term "may" is significant in that there is no requirement for the platform to actually enter the low power state after sending the TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) command. The software may, in fact, send subsequent commands after sending the TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) commands. The TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) command simply tells the TPM to save the required volatile contents because power to the TPM may be removed at any time. The TPM is responsible for tracking its internal state so that, if a command that alters the TPM's saved state is sent to the TPM after a TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) command, the TPM voids the saved internal state so a subsequent TPM2_Startup(STATE) will fail. In this case, it is the responsibility of platform software to send a subsequent TPM2_Shutdown (STATE) command to preserve the new internal state of the TPM.

It is the responsibility of the S-CRTM to indicate to the TPM using the TPM2_Startup command whether the TPM must reset or restore its saved state (e.g., PCR values, etc.). If the S-CRTM commands the TPM to restore the saved state (i.e., STATE), this restores the transitive trust chain. If the S-CRTM commands the TPM to reset the saved state (i.e., CLEAR), this clears and restarts a new transitive trust state. The rationale here is that the S-CRTM is trusted to establish the initial transitive trust chain, so it should also be trusted to determine whether to restore or clear it.

Power management has changed since the original LPC specification and TPM TIS were produced. The LPCPD# pin, as defined in the LPC specification, is a shared pin allowing for a power management protocol for ACPI S3-aware devices on the LPC bus. As TPMs do not know or participate in Suspend to RAM (ACPI S3), this pin has no meaning for a TPM. As such, the implementation of the LPCPD# pin on a TPM is platform and chipset implementation specific. If TPM vendors implement the LPCPD# pin and power management protocol, they should provide documentation indicating the method to disable the function.

In the *PC Client TPM Interface Specification 1.3*, the concept of a lower power operating mode was introduced which allows a TPM to enter a lower power state under specific considerations. The TPM, if in the idle state, can reduce its power consumption by shutting down internal functional blocks as long as its SPI or LPC interface and the TPM registers remain active. The intention is to prevent any impact to existing TPM drivers. When the TPM receives a transaction on its interface that would cause it to move from Idle to Ready, the TPM must exit the low power mode within TIMEOUT_B. There is no additional signaling or register bits required to transition the TPM into or out of a low power state. Because of the performance limitations of the pre-boot environment, this specification does not allow the TPM to enter a low power state prior to the receipt of a TPM2_Startup command.

1. After _TPM_INIT, the TPM SHALL behave as if it is in ACPI Device Power State D0
450   even if it supports ACPI Device Power States D1-D2.

2. The TPM SHALL NOT accept commands unless it is in the ACPI Device Power State D0.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT exit the ACPI Device Power State D3 unless it receives _TPM_INIT.

455 4. The TPM SHALL NOT enter an alternative ACPI Device Power State upon receipt of a TPM2_Shutdown (State) command.

5. If implementing an LPC TPM, the TPM SHALL be implemented to allow for the LPC power management protocol to be disabled by strapping LPCPD# pin HIGH.

6. If implementing an SPI TPM, the TPM MAY support lower power states ONLY if the
460   TPM is in the Idle state.

    a. If lower power states are supported, the TPM SHALL respond to requests to transition to the Ready state within TIMEOUT_B.

    b. The TPM SHALL NOT enter any lower power state between receipt of _TPM_INIT and receipt of a TPM2_Startup command.

465   **3.9   Self-Test Requirements**

The TPM 2.0 Library Specification has three ways for a TPM to test functions and capabilities: TPM2_SelfTest, TPM2_IncrementalTest, and on-demand testing.

The command TPM2_SelfTest provides a flag (FullTest) to allow a caller to control whether the TPM performs a full self-test or a partial self-test. TPM2_IncrementalTest
470 provides a means to specify which capabilities should be tested. On-demand testing allows the TPM to test an untested capability when it is invoked.

To make TPM behavior more deterministic for PC Client platforms, this specification constrains the behavior for TPM2_SelfTest. With the fullTest flag set to yes, the TPM will perform testing so that it mirrors the behavior of the TPM 1.2 SelfTestFull
475 command. With the fullTest flag set to no, the TPM will perform testing so that it is similar to the behavior of the TPM 1.2 ContinueSelfTest command.

This specification does not constrain TPM2_IncrementalTest or on-demand testing.

1. On receipt of TPM2_SelfTest(fullTest == NO), the TPM SHALL return TPM_RC_TESTING and perform background testing of untested functions,.

480   **Note:** The test status can be retrieved from the TPM using TPM2_GetTestResult.

2. On receipt of TPM2_SelfTest(fullTest == YES), the TPM SHALL perform a full self-test and return the result when all tests are complete.

3.10   Firmware Upgrade

The TPM 2.0 Library Specification provides a standardized mechanism for upgrading a
485 TPM's firmware. A TPM compliant to this specification must implement a firmware upgrade mechanism but is not required to implement the firmware upgrade specified in the TPM 2.0 Library Specification.

1. A TPM compliant to this specification SHALL implement firmware upgrade.

2. A TPM compliant to this specification MAY implement the TPM 2.0 Library
   490   Specification defined firmware upgrade.

   a. If the TPM implements the Library defined firmware upgrade, the TPM SHALL implement the commands TPM2_FieldUpgrade_Start and TPM2_FieldUpgrade_Data, and MAY implement TPM2_Firmware_Read.

4 TPM Capabilities and Commands

4.1 Command Table

495

The *TPM 2.0 Library Specification* defines the Protected Capabilities (commands) for many types of platforms in a manner that is not platform specific. Not all of the Protected Capabilities in the *TPM 2.0 Library Specification* are applicable to all platforms, and it is left to the platform specific specifications to enumerate which of

500   the commands are required for TPMs meant to be used in that type of platform.

1. To be compliant with this specification, the TPM SHALL support the commands labeled as mandatory (M) in the column labeled "M / O" in Table 6.

Table 6 — Mandatory/Optional TPM Commands

Commands	M / O	Comments
Signals / Indications		
__TPM_INIT	M	
_TPM_Hash_Start	M	
_TPM_Hash_Data	M	
_TPM_Hash_End	M	
Startup		
TPM2_Startup	M	
TPM2_Shutdown	M	
Testing		
TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest	M	
TPM2_SelfTest	M	
TPM2_GetTestResult	M	
Session Commands		
TPM2_StartAuthSession	M	
TPM2_PolicyRestart	M	

Commands	M / O	Comments
Object Commands		
TPM2_Create	M	
TPM2_Load	M	
TPM2_LoadExternal	M	
TPM2_ReadPublic	M	
TPM2_ActivateCredential	M	
TPM2_MakeCredential	M	
TPM2_Unseal	M	
TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth	M	
TPM2_CreateLoaded	M	
Duplicate Commands		
TPM2_Duplicate	M	
TPM2_Rewrap	O	
TPM2_Import	M	
Asymmetric Primitives		
TPM2_RSA_Encrypt	M	
TPM2_RSA_Decrypt	M	
TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen	M	
TPM2_ECDH_ZGen	M	
TPM2_ECC_Parameters	M	
TPM2_ZGen_2Phase	O	
Symmetric Primitives		
TPM2_EncryptDecrypt	O	
TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2	O	
TPM2_Hash	M	
TPM2_HMAC	M	
Random Number Generator		
TPM2_GetRandom	M	
TPM2_StirRandom	M	

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 21
May 22, 2017

Commands	M / O	Comments
Hash/HMAC/Event Sequences		
TPM2_HMAC_Start	M	
TPM2_HashSequenceStart	M	
TPM2_SequenceUpdate	M	
TPM2_SequenceComplete	M	
TPM2_EventSequenceComplete	M	
Attestation Commands		
TPM2_Certify	M	
TPM2_CertifyCreation	M	
TPM2_Quote	M	
TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest	M	
TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest	O	
TPM2_GetTime	M	
Anonymous Attestation		
TPM2_Commit	M	
TPM2_ECC_Ephemeral	O	
Signature Verification		
TPM2_VerifySignature	M	
TPM2_Sign	M	
Command Audit		
TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus	O	

Commands	M / O	Comments
Integrity Collection (PCR)		
TPM2_PCR_Extend	M	
TPM2_PCR_Event	M	
TPM2_PCR_Read	M	
TPM2_PCR_Allocate	M	
TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy	O	This command has no meaning for a PCR as PC Client TPMs do not implement authorization policy for PCR[1]
TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue	O	This command has no meaning for a PCR as PC Client TPMs do not implement authorization for PCR
TPM2_PCR_Reset	M	

---

[1] See Table 4 TPM_PT_PCR_POLICY attributes for all mandatory PCR.

Commands	M / O	Comments
Enhanced Authorization (EA)		
TPM2_PolicySigned	M	
TPM2_PolicySecret	M	
TPM2_PolicyTicket	M	
TPM2_PolicyOR	M	
TPM2_PolicyPCR	M	
TPM2_PolicyLocality	M	
TPM2_PolicyNV	M	
TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer	M	
TPM2_PolicyCommandCode	M	
TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence	O	Required if a TPM implements Physical Presence
TPM2_PolicyCpHash	M	
TPM2_PolicyNameHash	M	
TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect	M	
TPM2_PolicyAuthorize	M	
TPM2_PolicyAuthValue	M	
TPM2_PolicyPassword	M	
TPM2_PolicyGetDigest	M	
TPM2_PolicyNvWritten	M	
TPM2_PolicyTemplate	M	
TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV	M	

Commands	M / O	Comments
Hierarchy Commands		
TPM2_CreatePrimary	M	
TPM2_HierarchyControl	M	
TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy	M	
TPM2_ChangePPS	O	This command may be required for successful completion of a FIPS140-2 evaluation
TPM2_ChangeEPS	O	This command may be required for successful completion of a FIPS140-2 evaluation
TPM2_Clear	M	
TPM2_ClearControl	M	
TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth	M	
Dictionary Attack Functions		
TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset	M	
TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters	M	
Miscellaneous Management Functions		
TPM2_PP_Commands	O	
TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet	O	
Field Upgrade		
TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart	O	Both of these commands are required if either is implemented
TPM2_FieldUpgradeData		
TPM2_FirmwareRead	O	
Context Management		
TPM2_ContextSave	M	
TPM2_ContextLoad	M	
TPM2_FlushContext	M	
TPM2_EvictControl	M	
Clocks and Timers		
TPM2_ReadClock	M	
TPM2_ClockSet	M	
TPM2_ClockRateAdjust	M	

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 25
May 22, 2017

Commands	M / O	Comments
Capability Commands		
TPM2_GetCapability	M	
TPM2_TestParms	M	
Non-volatile Storage		
TPM2_NV_DefineSpace	M	
TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace	M	
TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial	M	
TPM2_NV_ReadPublic	M	
TPM2_NV_Write	M	
TPM2_NV_Increment	M	
TPM2_NV_Extend	M	
TPM2_NV_SetBits	M	
TPM2_NV_WriteLock	M	
TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock	O	
TPM2_NV_Read	M	
TPM2_NV_ReadLock	M	
TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth	M	
TPM2_NV_Certify	M	
Vendor Specific		
TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test	O	Mandatory if Vendor Proprietary commands that can be tested are implemented

4.2   Locality-Controlled Functions

4.2.1   DRTM Execution Sequence

The Dynamic RTM is started while the platform may be in an untrusted state. Special trusted mechanisms must be established to communicate the source of the corresponding commands to the TPM. These commands are indicated and controlled by the appropriate locality.

Locality 4 has the unique ability to reset the Locality 4 PCR. It can also use HASH_DATA to send data to the TPM to be hashed and extended to the Locality 4 PCR. There is no header or other information that accompanies the data, for the FIFO interface. For the CRB interface, the first two bytes of the data contain the size of the data to be hashed. Upon receipt of HASH_END, the TPM will initialize the PCR, complete the hash, and extend the resultant value into the Locality 4 PCR, as defined in the *TPM 2.0 Library Specification*.

The Locality 4 PCR (PCR[17]) contains the first measurement of the Dynamic RTM for the Dynamic OS. Because the security of the Dynamic Launch is dependent solely on the reset and initial measurement in the Locality 4 PCR, access to Locality 4's extend operations should not have security implications.

It is expected that any PC Client platform is designed such that the platform protects Locality 4 access to the TPM, ensuring access only from platform components operating at Locality 4.

Note: For a DRTM sequence (HASH_START/_DATA/_END) to occur, the TPM must have received a TPM2_Startup command prior to the HASH_START. If the TPM receives HASH_START after a __TPM_INIT but before a startup command, the TPM treats this as H-CRTM sequence.

The data written to the TPM_HASH_START and TPM_HASH_END interface registers of the FIFO interface has no significance and may be any value.

Note: For the CRB interface, an optimization allows both the TPM_HASH_DATA and TPM_HASH_END fields of the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 register to be SET in the same write cycle.

535   This specification defines a persistent indicator in the TPM that allows a caller to detect that a Dynamic OS has been invoked regardless of whether the Dynamic OS is currently controlling the platform. This indication is done using the Establishment bit. The state of this bit upon any TPM2_Startup is 1 until the first DRTM sequence. The first DRTM sequence (which begins the chain of trust for the Dynamic OS) is signaled using HASH_START, which sets the Establishment bit to 0. See Sections 5.5.2.4 and 5.5.3.2.2.
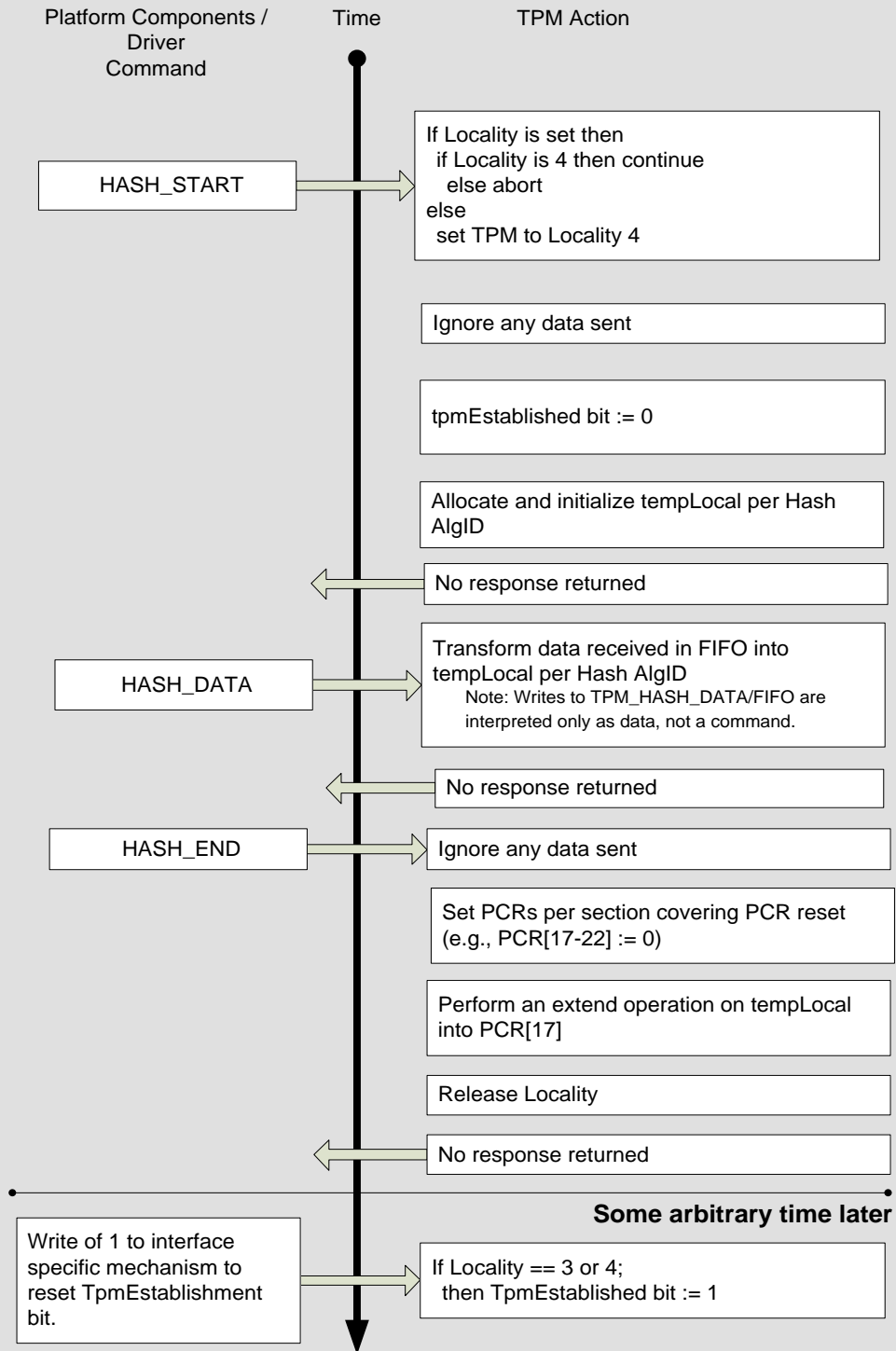
540   **Figure 1 — Overview of D-CRTM Measurement Sequence**

1. A DRTM sequence is started by a HASH_START which occurs following a TPM2_Startup command.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 29
May 22, 2017

   a. A HASH_START is either:

      i. In the FIFO interface, a successful write to the TPM_HASH_START interface
545   register, or

      ii. In the CRB interface, a successful write to the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 interface
         register with the TPM_HASH_START field SET.

2. DRTM data is provided by a HASH_DATA which occurs following a HASH_START

   a. A HASH_DATA is either:

550   i. In the FIFO interface, a successful write to the TPM_HASH_DATA interface
         register, or

      ii. In the CRB interface, a successful write of two or more bytes to the
         command buffer followed by a write to the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 interface
         register with the TPM_HASH_DATA field SET.

555   **Note:** The first two bytes in the command buffer, in big endian notation,
      indicate the number of bytes to be hashed when HASH_DATA is received.

3. A DRTM sequence is completed by a HASH_END that follows a HASH_START

   a. A HASH_END is either:

      i. In the FIFO interface, a successful write to the TPM_HASH_END interface
560   register, or

      ii. In the CRB interface, a successful write to the TPM_LOCK_CTRL_4 interface
         register with the TPM_HASH_END field SET.

4. Upon receipt of HASH_START, the TPM SHALL follow the protocol below and
   perform the operations in the following pseudo-code to affect the resettable PCRs:

565   **Note:** While the resulting functionality presented by the steps below is normative,
      the actual operations and their sequence as presented here are informative. There
      is no requirement to perform the following operations exactly as shown. However
      implemented, the results *are required* to *be the same as if the TPM were
      implemented as described below.*

570   a. HASH_START: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL:

      i. If no Locality field is set, SET the active Locality field to indicate Locality 4.

      ii. If a locality is active, and if the active Locality field is not 4, ignore this
         command.

      iii. Clear the write buffer (FIFO only).

575   **Note:** If the FIFO is cleared as a result of relinquishing locality, this step
      may be omitted.

      iv. If there is an exclusive session, the TPM SHALL have no exclusive session
         following the HASH_START.

      v. Ignore any data component of this interface command.

580   vi. Perform operations per TPM 2.0 Library Specification for the
         _TPM_Hash_Start indication.

b. HASH_DATA: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL perform operations as defined in TPM 2.0 Library Specification for the _TPM_Hash_Data indication.

585   c. HASH_END: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL:

i. CLEAR the Establishment bit.

Note: See description of Bit Field: Establishment bit in Section 5.5.2.4 Access Register and Section 5.5.3.2.1 Locality State Register.

ii. Set to 0 all PCR which are reset by a DRTM event as indicated by Table 4.

590   iii. Perform the hash functions as if TPM2_PCR_Event command was being used.

Note: This is consistent with the Hash Interface Command in TPM 1.2.

iv. Perform operations as defined in TPM 2.0 Library Specification for the _TPM_Hash_End indication

595   v. Clear active Locality.

Note: The write buffer is cleared as a result of relinquishing locality for both the FIFO and CRB interfaces.

d. After successful completion of HASH_START and before HASH_END:

i. For the FIFO interface, all cycles and commands other than writes to the 600   TPM_HASH_DATA and TPM_HASH_END interface registers SHALL be ignored until HASH_END

ii. For the CRB interface, all cycles and commands other than writes to the Command Buffer and TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 registers SHALL be ignored until HASH_END.

605   e. Upon any error in the above steps the TPM SHALL release locality and enter Failure Mode.

Note: No response packet is returned for HASH_START, HASH_DATA, or HASH_END.

4.2.2   H-CRTM Sequence Before TPM2_Startup() and TPM2_Startup() without H-CRTM
610

The Hardware CRTM is started in the earliest stage of platform boot and is initiated by a CPU. The H-CRTM sequence only applies to PCR 0 if the sequence is initiated prior to a TPM2_Startup command. The actions of the sequence are identical to that of a DRTM sequence with the exception of the value to which the PCR is initialized and 615   when the PCR is initialized and extended.

The error handling for the H-CRTM sequence is identical to the error handling described in 4.2.1 DRTM Execution Sequence.

1. A TPM_Startup command SHALL come from Locality 0 or 3, else the TPM SHALL return TPM_RC_Locality.

620   2. Upon receipt of a HASH_START, the TPM follows the protocol below and performs the operations in the following pseudo-code to affect PCR 0:

Note: While the resulting functionality presented by the steps below is normative, the actual operations and their sequence as presented here are informative. There is no requirement to perform the following operations exactly as shown. However implemented, the results SHALL be the same as if the TPM were implemented as described below.

a. HASH_START: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL:

   i.   If no locality field is set, set the active locality field to indicate Locality 4.

   ii. If a locality is active, and if the active locality field is not 4, ignore this command.

   iii. Perform operations as defined in TPM 2.0 Library Specification _TPM_Hash_Start indication.

b. HASH_DATA: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL perform operations as defined in TPM 2.0 Library Specification _TPM_Hash_Data indication.

   Note: For the CRB interface, bytes 0 and 1 of the data written to the command buffer contain the length of the subsequent data to be extended.

c. HASH_END: Upon receipt of this interface command, the TPM SHALL:

   i.   Perform operations as defined in TPM 2.0 Library Specification _TPM_Hash_End

   ii. Clear activeLocality.

4.2.3   Timing and Protocol

The DRTM and H-CRTM sequences execute within a resource-restricted environment which is among the reasons the HASH_START/_DATA/_END protocol is used rather than the more obvious TPM command ordinals (e.g., TPM2_PCR_Extend). It is also difficult and unnecessary for this environment to use the register-based protocols. Therefore, during the Locality 4 HASH_START/_DATA/_END sequence, the only method to throttle commands to the TPM uses the bus wait mechanism. (There is no data returning from TPM within this environment.) Specifically, the TPM uses the LPC bus "long wait" sync (using LPC terms) or SPI wait cycles as defined in Section 6.4.5 Flow Control to indicate to the "host" that it is not able to accept more data.

This environment also may not be conducive to "timeouts" and may be very susceptible to delays or hangs. It is important that the TPM be designed to avoid excessive delays and should not cause the bus to hang during this time.

1. During the HASH_START/_DATA/_END sequence, the TPM SHALL use the appropriate bus wait mechanism (LPC bus "long wait sync" or SPI "wait cycle") to indicate its inability to accept more commands or data. While the TPM MAY set the TPM_STS_x or TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x fields they are "undefined" during these commands (i.e. will likely not be read and will not be honored).

2. The TPM SHALL respond to HASH_START within TIMEOUT_B.

3. The TPM SHOULD respond to each HASH_DATA and HASH_END within 250 microseconds and SHALL respond within TIMEOUT_B.

5   TPM Software Interface

5.1   Interface Type

665

This specification defines a new software interface to the TPM for TPM 2.0, in addition to the FIFO interface. This interface, the Command Response Buffer Interface, has been defined so that it may be implemented in a TPM which also contains a FIFO interface. The CRB Interface is intended to be physical-bus agnostic, so that it could be implemented on an LPC or SPI interface, as specified in this specification or on

670

another physical interface not specified. In order for a TPM to be compliant with this specification, however, it is required to implement at least one of the interfaces defined by this specification.

The physical register spaces for both FIFO and CRB are specified in Section 5.3 TPM Register Space. Register space with functions common to both interfaces is specified

675

in Section 5.5.1 Interface Agnostic Functions. The behavior of the CRB Interface is specified in Section 5.5.3 CRB Interface Requirements. In the subsequent sections, functionality that is interface-independent precedes the interface-specific functionality. Where a function is common to both interfaces, but there are interface-specific requirements, the requirements are documented in the interface-specific

680

section. For example, the concepts of locality are common to both interfaces, but the mechanisms to invoke locality are interface specific.

1. A TPM compliant with this specification SHALL implement at least one of the following interfaces:

   a. Command Response Buffer (CRB) Interface, or

685

   b. FIFO Interface

2. The TPM SHALL implement the InterfaceType field in the interface specific Interface Identifier register, TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x for FIFO and TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x for CRB.

3. A TPM which supports both interface types SHALL expose only one Interface at a

690

   time.

4. The mechanism for switching between interfaces SHALL be implemented as defined in Section 5.4.2 Interface Identifier Register.

5.2   Locality

Locality Priority is described in Section 2.2 Locality.

695

5.2.1   TPM Locality Levels

TPM 2.0 supports five levels of locality: Locality None and Localities 0-4. PC Client platform usage of locality levels is defined in the PC Client Implementation Specification.

The usage of PCRs with respect to locality is defined in Section 3.7.1 PCR Attributes.

700   For the platform, the locality level is indicated by the address used along with the TPM bus Start cycle. For system software, the TPM has a 64 bit address of 0x0000_0000_FED4_xxxx. On LPC, the chipset passes the least significant 16 bits to the TPM. On SPI, the chipset passes the least significant 24 bits to the TPM.   The upper bytes will be used by the chipset to select the TPM's SPI CS# signal. Table 7

705   shows the locality based on the 16 least significant address bits and assume that either the LPC TPM sync or SPI TPM CS# is used. TPM commands, e.g. TPM2_PCR_Reset, may also require locality. The TPM, upon receipt of each command, sets (based on the TPM register Address) the locality for the command. Locality, as presently defined, may be Locality 0 through 4.

710   **Table 7 — Locality Address Definitions**

System/Software Address	TPM Address on LPC (Using TPM START Cycle)	TPM Address on SPI	Locality
FED4_0xxxh	0xxxh	D4_0xxxh	0
FED4_1xxxh	1xxxh	D4_1xxxh	1
FED4_2xxxh	2xxxh	D4_2xxxh	2
FED4_3xxxh	3xxxh	D4_3xxxh	3
FED4_4xxxh	4xxxh	D4_4xxxh	4

When the TPM is in a "free" state, it must be prepared to accept HASH_START (See 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions).

Note on locality priority:

The statements in 2.2 Locality regarding locality hierarchy notwithstanding, the

715   selection of localities has a priority. If two localities have requested use of the TPM when the current locality relinquishes it, the locality with the highest priority gets access to the TPM. The locality's priority increases as its locality number increases. i.e., Locality 0 has the lowest priority while Locality 4 has the highest.

Note on Locality 4 management:

720   Locality 4 accesses are controlled by trusted hardware responsible for maintaining the DRTM, and software should not use Locality 4 commands. Trusted hardware should be implemented so that Locality 4 operations are not accessible to software.

If the active locality is a locality other than 4, HASH_START is ignored. If there is no locality set, HASH_START makes Locality 4 the active locality. Once the HASH_DATA

725   sequence is completed at Locality 4, HASH_END releases Locality 4 and returns the TPM to a "free" state.

1. The TPM SHALL maintain the relationship between locality and the locality attribute as defined in Table 8.

2. For the purpose of assigning locality, when the host software has requested use of

730   the TPM using either the locality request method or Seize method, the locality with the highest numeric value has the highest priority. i.e., Locality 1 has a higher priority than Locality 0.

3. When the TPM is at the "free" state, it SHALL accept a write to any of the TPM_HASH_x registers (FIFO interface) or the TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 register (CRB

735   interface).

Table 8 — Relationship between Locality and Locality Attribute

Locality	Value of LocalityIndicator
Locality 0	01h
Locality 1	02h
Locality 2	04h
Locality 3	08h
Locality 4	10h

5.2.2 Locality Uses

Usage of Locality 0 PCRs is determined by the *TCG PC Client Specific Implementation Specification*. Usage of Locality 1-3 PCRs is reserved for uses which are outside the purview of this specification.

The idea behind locality is that certain combinations of software and hardware are allowed more privileges than other combinations. For instance, the highest level of locality might be cycles that only hardware could create.

While higher localities may exist, Locality 4 is the highest locality level defined. These cycles are generated by hardware in support of the DRTM. Cycles which require Locality 4 would include things such as the HASH_START/_DATA/_END interface commands.

As an example, assume a platform, including software, has an operating system based on the Static RTM or Static OS, based on either using no PCRs or the set of non-resettable PCRs(0-15), and trusted software, the dynamically launched operating system, or Dynamic OS, which uses the resettable PCRs (17-22). In this case, there is a need to differentiate cycles originating from the two operating systems. Localities 1-3 are used by the Dynamic OS for its transactions. The Dynamic OS has created certain values in the resettable PCRs. Only the Dynamic OS should be able to issue commands based on those PCRs. The Static OS uses Locality 0.

The non-resettable PCRs (i.e., PCR[0-15]) are not part of the Dynamic OS's domain, so Locality 0 transactions can freely use those PCRs, but must be prevented from resetting or extending PCRs used by the Dynamic OS (see Section 3.7.1 PCR Attributes for the PCR's which are resettable by the Dynamic OS).

Note to Platform and OS Implementers:

Each RTM (e.g., the DRTM) has a root PCR associated with it. The fundamental trusted boot requirement is that when the RTM is initiated/reset its associated root PCR must also be reset. Conversely, the root PCR must never be reset unless its associated RTM is also initialized/reset. When launching the Dynamic OS, the root dynamic PCR must only be reset when the DRTM is initiated/reset.

The TPM architecture doesn't provide the TPM with a method for controlling access to any of its localities, therefore, controlling access to the various localities is up to either the platform components or the OS. However, even the Dynamic OS must not be allowed to reset the root Dynamic PCR because the Dynamic OS is what is measured into this PCR. Therefore, the platform components must restrict access to Locality 4 to only the D-CRTM components. This is to protect the resetting of the root Dynamic PCR (i.e., PCR[17]). (Note that because some TPMs have implemented the command FIFO for Locality 4, the platform must protect the entire Locality 4 address range to prevent unauthorized software from executing the TPM2_PCR_Reset command on PCR[17] at Locality 4.)

While the Dynamic OS is executing, the platform components may provide software access to localities other than 4. In this case, if the Dynamic OS requires protection for these localities it must protect them using methods such as virtual memory management (i.e., paging).

1. The TPM SHALL enforce locality access to each TPM resource that requires locality (such as PCRs) or uses TPM2_PolicyLocality() in its authorization policy.

5.3   TPM Register Space

5.3.1   TPM Register Space Decode

Many of the registers in the TPM Register Space are defined using a contiguous address range within a given locality. There are common requirements for decoding the address space between the FIFO register space and the CRB register space. These common requirements are documented in this section. The actual address space for FIFO and CRB is different and there are some unique restrictions. The interface specific information is documented in the subsequent sections for each interface.

FIFO Register Space Decode

Most of the FIFO registers are accessed with the TPM decoding all addresses within the specified address ranges. For registers with the same function for different localities, the address range for one locality is not contiguous with the address range for a different locality. Some of these registers which are defined separately with separate address ranges, e.g. the TPM_STS_x register, may be mirrored such that each separate address range (for example 0x001A to 0x0018 for TPM_STS_0 and 0x101A_0x1018 for TPM_STS_1) points to the same physical register.

Another one of the registers which is defined as having five addresses is the TPM data register (TPM_DATA_FIFO_x). For this register, the addresses within this range may be aliased to one internal register.

Note that the addresses allocated for the Locality 4 HASH* commands do not exist in Localities 0-3.

CRB Register Space Decode

The CRB address space is a contiguous space that may be instantiated in hardware or in ACPI AddressRangeReserved memory. When a TPM implements a CRB in hardware, the register space is defined in the Section 5.5.3 <u>CRB Interface Requirements.</u>

General Address Space Decode Considerations

810 The LPC bus transfers a single byte per transaction to any of the registers. The chipset may, for performance reasons, send a DW (4 bytes) for each transaction. This will appear as four distinct LPC bus transactions, with each incrementing the address by 1 byte with each set of transactions starting with the least significant byte – thus being little-endian. Because the TPM can accept only 1 byte per transaction, the TPM must ignore the 2 least significant bits of the address for the data registers thus receiving 815 the data serially. However, it should not require or expect that each address is incremented modulo-4.

The SPI bus does not limit transfers to a single byte. The extended size data register (TPM_XDATA_FIFO_x) and CRB data buffer allow a single write to offset 0x0080h up to 64B, without requiring software to increment the address. It is technically possible to 820 send a single transaction on SPI that spans more than one register in the TPM's address space. Software should never attempt to access multiple registers in a single transaction. Software should access each register in unique, individual transactions and not attempt to cross register boundaries. Software may access only part of a register, e.g. read or write one byte of a 4 byte register. Software should not initiate a 825 transaction that is either larger than the register size (2 byte access to a 1 byte register), or that extends beyond the defined register boundary (2 byte transaction to offset 0x3 of a register defined as existing within the address range of 0x0 to 0x3). This is simply good software behavior and these guidelines are not specific to TPM transactions, but apply to all hardware and software.

830 Because the TPM must be designed to handle cases where software behaves badly, this specification defines behavior for the TPM in the event that a transaction crosses multiple registers. TPM vendors should design their hardware so that bad software does not impact the state or security of the TPM. Specific error behavior is specified in Section 5.5.1.8 Errors.

835 1. A TPM compliant with this specification SHALL implement an Interface Identifier register:

    a. A TPM which only supports the FIFO interface SHALL support the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x register.

    b. A TPM which supports a CRB interface SHALL support the 840 TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x register.

2. For SPI, if a TPM receives an access request with a length that exceeds the size of the register specified in the transaction address:

    a. Reads:

        i. The TPM SHALL return the data for the register designated by the start 845 address.

        ii. The TPM MAY return the data for additional, adjacent registers within the targeted address range, or the TPM MAY return dummy data for additional, adjacent registers within the targeted address range.

    b. Writes:

        i. The TPM SHALL update the register designated by the start address.

        ii. The TPM MAY update additional, adjacent registers within the targeted address range.

iii. The TPM SHALL NOT change the state of adjacent registers if the writes to that register are dropped.

855 c. The TPM SHOULD NOT abort (as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts) an entire transaction that crosses a register boundary.

d. When a transaction crosses a register boundary, the TPM SHALL NOT allow data from that transaction to corrupt future SPI transactions.

3. For the FIFO data buffers:

860 a. TPM_DATA_FIFO_x

The TPM SHALL ignore the 2 least significant bits of the address for these registers and accept each byte received to any of the addresses within this register as a single transfer to the base address.

b. TPM_XDATA_FIFO_x

865 The TPM SHALL accept transactions to offset 0x0080h which are of any length from 1 byte to the maximum supported length (as reported in the Interface Capability register, Section 5.5.2.7 Interface Capability).

4. The TPM MAY accept transactions to offset 0x0081h-0x0083h which are of lengths between 3 bytes-1 byte.

870 **Note**: This behavior mirrors the behavior of the TPM_DATA_FIFO_x.

5. The TPM MAY accept transactions to offset 0x0080h which are of lengths larger than the maximum supported length (as reported in the Interface Capability register, see Section 5.5.2.7 Interface Capability), based on the existing interface protocol using TPM_STS_x.burstCount and TPM_STS_x.Expect as defined in

875 Section 5.5.2.4 Access Register.

a. All other registers:

i. The TPM SHALL fully decode the address down to the byte level (unless otherwise specified).

ii. The TPM SHALL interpret registers that have multiple addresses as follows:

880 (a) The lowest address within the set of addresses contains the least significant byte with the bits incrementing to each successive address up to the highest address which contains the most significant byte.

Note: Addresses are implemented as in Table 9.

6. For the CRB Interface, as all registers are aligned on either 32-bit or 64-bit address

885 boundaries, the following restrictions apply:

a. For an access with a start address for an address aligned on a 32-bit boundary with a length larger than 32 bits:

i. For write transactions,

ii. The TPM MAY update the register with the start address equal to the

890 transaction start address and wholly contained within the transaction address.

(1) The TPM MAY ABORT (as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts) the transaction.

(2) The TPM SHALL not update any register whose start address is not
895   equal to the start address of the transaction.

   iii. For read transactions,

(1) The TPM MAY return the response data for the register with the start
address equal to the transaction start address and wholly contained
within the transaction address.

900   (2) The TPM MAY ABORT (as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts) the
transaction.

Table 9 — Example Bit-to-Address Mapping

Address	Data Bit Position	Example
0x00000008	7:0	0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 1000
0x00000900	15:8	0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 1001 0000 0000
0x000A0000	23:16	0000 0000 0000 1010 0000 0000 0000 0000
0x0B000000	31:24	0000 1011 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000

5.3.2   Register Space Addresses

Table 10 lists a comparison of the addresses decoded by the TPM when FIFO or CRB
905   (in hardware) is implemented.

Table 10 — Allocation of Register Space for FIFO and CRB Access

Offset	FIFO Register Name	CRB Register Name
Locality 0		
0000h	TPM_ACCESS_0	TPM_LOC_STATE_0
0001h	Reserved	
0002h		
0003h		
0007h-0004h		Reserved
000Bh-0008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_0	TPM_LOC_CTRL_0
000Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_0	TPM_LOC_STS_0
000Fh-000Dh	Reserved	
0013h-0010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_0	Reserved
0017h-0014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0	
001Bh-0018h	TPM_STS_0	
0023h-001Ch	Reserved	
0027h_0024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_0	
002Fh-0028h	Reserved	
0033h-0030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0
0037h-0034h	Reserved	
003Fh-0038h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_EXT
0043h-0040h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0
0047h-0044h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_0
004Bh-0048h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0
004Fh-004Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0
0053h-0050h		TPM_CRB_ INT_ENABLE_0
0057h-0054h		TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0
005Bh-0058h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0
005Fh-005Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0
0063h-0060h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0
0067h-0064h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0
006Fh-0068h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_0
007Fh-0070h		Reserved
0083h-0080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_0	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0
0880h-0084h	Reserved	
0EFFh-0881h		Reserved
0F03h-0F00h	TPM_DID_VID_0	
0F04h	TPM_RID_0	
0FFFh-0F90h	Reserved	

Offset	FIFO Register Name	CRB Register Name
Locality 1		
1000h	TPM_ACCESS_1	
1001h		TPM_LOC_STATE_1
1002h	Reserved	
1003h		
1007h-1004h		Reserved
100Bh-1008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_1	TPM_LOC_CTRL_1
100Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_1	TPM_LOC_STS_1
100Fh-100Dh	Reserved	
1013h-1010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_1	
1017h-1014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_1	
101Bh-1018h	TPM_STS_1	Reserved
1023h-101Ch	Reserved	
1027h-1024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_1	
102Fh-1028h	Reserved	
1033h-1030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_1	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_1
1037h-1032h		
103Fh-1038h		Reserved
1043h-1040h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_1
1047h-1044h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_1
104Bh-1048h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_1
104Fh-104Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_1
1053h-1050h	Reserved	TPM_CRB _INT_ENABLE_1
1057h-1054h		TPM_CRB_INT_STS_1
105Bh-1058h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_1
105Fh-105Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_1
1063h-1060h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_1
1067h-1064h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_1
106Fh-1068h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_1
107Fh-1070h		Reserved
1083h-1080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_1	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_1
1880h-1084h	Reserved	
1EFFh-1881h		Reserved
1F03h-1F00h	TPM_DID_VID_1	
1F04h	TPM_RID_1	Reserved
1FFFh-1F05h	Reserved	

Offset	FIFO Register Name	CRB Register Name
Locality 2		
2000h	TPM_ACCESS_2	
2001h		TPM_LOC_STATE_2
2002h	Reserved	
2003h		
2007h-2004h		Reserved
200Bh-2008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_2	TPM_LOC_CTRL_2
200Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_2	TPM_LOC_STS_2
200Fh-200Dh	Reserved	
2013h-2010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_2	
2017h-2014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_2	
201Bh-2018h	TPM_STS_2	Reserved
2023h-201Ch	Reserved	
2027h-2024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_2	
202Fh-2028h	Reserved	
2033h-2030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_2	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_2
2037h-2034h		
203Fh-2038h		Reserved
2043h-2040h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_2
2047h-2044h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_2
204Bh-2048h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_2
204Fh-204Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_2
2053h-2050h	Reserved	TPM_CRB_ INT_ENABLE_2
2057h-2054h		TPM_CRB_INT_STS_2
205Bh-2058h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_2
205Fh-205Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_2
2063h-2060h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_2
2067h-2064h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_2
206Fh-2068h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_2
207Fh-2070h		Reserved
2083h-2080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_2	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_2
2880h-2084h	Reserved	
2EFFh-2881h		Reserved
2F03h-2F00h	TPM_DID_VID_2	
2F04h	TPM_RID_2	Reserved
2FFFh-2F05h	Reserved	

Offset	FIFO Register Name	CRB Register Name
Locality 3		
3000h	TPM_ACCESS_3	TPM_LOC_STATE_3
3001h	Reserved	
3002h		
3003h		
3007h-3004h		Reserved
300Bh-3008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_3	TPM_LOC_CTRL_3
300Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_3	TPM_LOC_STS_3
300Fh-300Dh	Reserved	
3013h-3010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_3	Reserved
3017h-3014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_3	
301Bh-3018h	TPM_STS_3	
3023h-301Ch	Reserved	
3027h-3024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_3	
302Fh-3028h	Reserved	
3033h-3030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_3	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_3
3037h-3034h	Reserved	
303Fh-3038h		Reserved
3043h-3040h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_3
3047h-3044h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_3
304Bh-3048h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_3
304Fh-304Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_3
3053h-3050h		TPM_CRB _INT_ENABLE_3
3057h-3054h		TPM_CRB_INT_STS_3
305Bh-3058h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_3
305Fh-305Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_3
3063h-3060h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_3
3067h-3064h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_3
306Fh-3068h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_3
307Fh-3070h		Reserved
3083h-3080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_3	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_3
3880h-3084h	Reserved	
3EFFh-3881h		Reserved
3F03h-3F00h	TPM_DID_VID_3	Reserved
3F04h	TPM_RID_3	
3FFFh-3F05h	Reserved	

Offset	FIFO Register Name	CRB Register Name
Locality 4		
4000h	TPM_ACCESS_4	
4001h		TPM_LOC_STATE_4
4002h	Reserved	
4003h		
4007h-4004h		Reserved
400Bh-4008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_4	TPM_LOC_CTRL_4
400Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_4	TPM_LOC_STS_4
400Fh-400Dh	Reserved	
4013h-4010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_4	
4017h-4014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_4	
401Bh-4018h	TPM_STS_4	
401Fh-401Ch	Reserved	Reserved
4023h-4020h	TPM_HASH_END	
4027h-4024h	TPM_HASH_DATA / TPM_DATA_FIFO_4	
402Fh-4028h	TPM_HASH_START	
4033h-4030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_4	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_4
4037h-4034h		
403Fh-4038h		Reserved
4043h-4040h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_4
4047h-4044h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_4
404Bh-4048h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_4
404Fh-404Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_4
4053h-4050h	Reserved	TPM_CRB_ INT_ENABLE_4
4057h-4054h		TPM_CRB_INT_STS_4
405Bh-4058h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_4
405Fh-405Ch		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_4
4063h-4060h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_4
4067h-4064h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_4
406Fh-4068h		TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_4
407Fh-4070h		Reserved
4083h-4080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_4	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_4
4880h-4084h	Reserved	
4EFFh-4881h		Reserved
4F03h-4F00h	TPM_DID_VID_4	
4F04h	TPM_RID_4	Reserved
4FFFh-4F05h	Reserved	
Non-Locality Specific Registers		
5FFFh-5000h	Reserved	Reserved

Subsequent sections provide implementation details on the defined registers for both FIFO and CRB interfaces. See Sections 5.5.2 <u>FIFO Interface Requirements</u> and 5.5.3 <u>CRB Interface Requirements</u>.

910 ## 5.4   System Interaction and Flows

5.4.1   FIFO Configuration Registers

5.4.1.1   DID/VID Register

Table 11 — DID/VID Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_DID_VID_x
General Description:			Vendor and Device ID for the TPM
Default			Vendor specific
Bit Descriptions:			
31:16	Read Only	DID	Device ID – vendor specific
15:0	Read Only	VID	Vendor ID – Assigned by TCG Administration. This is represented within the register in big-endian format. For example, a vendor ID of 0x1234 would be represented as: Bits 7:0 = 34 (0011 0100); Bits 15:8 = 12 (0001 0010).

5.4.1.2   RID Register

915 **Table 12 — RID Register**

Abbreviation:			TPM_RID_x
General Description:			Revision ID for the TPM
Default			Specific to each revision
Bit Descriptions:			
7:0	Read Only	RID	Revision ID – specifies the revision of the component

5.4.2   Interface Identifier Register

The Interface Identifier register is defined for both the legacy FIFO interface and the new CRB interface to allow TPM vendors to support both interfaces, but not all
920 functions are present in the FIFO that are present in the CRB version. The CRB Interface Identifier includes DID/VID/RID registers, which are located in a separate address space in the FIFO interface. Software can query this register to determine which interface the TPM supports, the Interface Version and what Interface type is currently enabled. The Interface Identifier registers are aliased across localities.

925 TPMs implemented to support PC Client Specific TPM Interface Specification 1.3 or earlier will return 1111b for InterfaceType. If this field returns 1111b, a TPM may be a TPM family 2.0 implemented with a FIFO interface compliant with TIS 1.3. If this is the case, PTP specific features will be implemented as part of the TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x register, not this register.

930 ### 5.4.2.1   FIFO Interface Identifier Register

Table 13 — FIFO Interface Identifier Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x	
General Description:			Interface Identifier Register	
Default			Specific to each revision	
Bit Descriptions:				
31:24	Read Only	Reserved	Reserved	
23:20	Read Only	Reserved	Reads return 0	
19	Read Write	IntfSelLock	0 – A write of this value is ignored 1 – A write of this value locks the InterfaceSelector field and prevents further changes. Field is reset to 0 on _TPM_INIT	
18:17	Read Write	InterfaceSelector	00 – A write of this value changes the selected interface to TIS 01 – A write of this value changes the selected interface to CRB Writes to this field take effect on next _TPM_INIT. Other values are reserved. This field may only be written if IntfSelLock is 0.	
16:15	Read Only	CapIFRes	Reserved for future interfaces (since InterfaceSelector is a two-bit field), reads return 0	
14	Read Only	CapCRB	0 – CRB interface is not supported. 1 – CRB interface is supported and may be selected.	
13	Read Only	CapTIS	0 – TIS interface is not supported. 1 – TIS interface is supported and may be selected.	
12:9	Read Only	Reserved	Reserved Reads return 0	
8	Read Only	CapLocality	0 – This interface supports Locality 0 only. 1 – This interface supports 5 localities (Localities 0-4).	
7:4	Read Only	InterfaceVersion	0001 – CRB interface version 0. 0000 – FIFO interface for TPM2.0.	
3:0	Read Only	InterfaceType	0000 – FIFO interface as defined in PTP for TPM 2.0 is active. 0001 – CRB interface is active. 1111 – FIFO interface as defined in TIS1.3 is active (all other fields of this register are don't care).	

Field: Interface Type

This field identifies the interface type currently active. While some TPMs may support either of these interfaces for product requirement and marketing purposes, only one interface can be active at a time. The selection of the interface is TPM Vendor Specific.

This field applies to the entire TPM address range within the scope of the Interface Type. For example, if the Interface Type is FIFO, the FIFO Interface spans all the localities defined for the FIFO Interface which is address FED4_0000h – FED4_4FFFh.

The state of this field governs the behavior of the rest of this register. If Interface Type indicates a TIS 1.3 style Interface, no other field in this register is valid. The capabilities of the interface as defined in TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x determine what is supported by the interface.

1. A value of 1111b in this field SHALL be interpreted to mean the TPM supports a PC Client TPM Interface Specification v1.3 compliant FIFO interface.

NOTE: A TPM supporting the PC Client TPM Interface Specification v1.2 compliant FIFO interface will report supported capabilities in the TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x register.

2. If the TPM supports this specification, the value of this field SHALL NOT be 1111b.

3. Writes to this field SHALL be ignored.

4. If this field is set to 0000b:

    a. The TPM SHALL correctly report all other capabilities for TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x fields

    b. The TPM SHALL support TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceVersion, which SHALL be defined for the FIFO interface as 0h.

    c. The TPM MAY deprecate TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.InterfaceVersion

5. If this field is set to 0001b:

    a. The TPM SHALL correctly report all other capabilities for TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x fields.

    b. The TPM SHALL support TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceVersion, which SHALL be defined for the CRB interface as 0001b.

    c. The TPM SHALL NOT support TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.InterfaceVersion.

6. If this field is set to 1111b, this register is not implemented.

    NOTE: If this field is set to 1111b, the TPM may have implemented features from this specification on an interface built to comply with the TCG PC Client TPM Interface Specification version 1.3. If so, the features will be described in the TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x register. This register is not implemented in this case.

Field: Interface Version

This field contains the versions of the interface types defined in this specification.

1. If TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceVersion = 1111b, this field is invalid.

970 2. If TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceVersion != 1111b:

   a. The TPM SHALL report the version for the current active Interface type as indicated by the Interface Type field.

   b. When FIFO is active, the TPM SHALL support TPM_STS_x.commandCancel and TPM_STS_x.resetEstablishmentBit.

975 ### Field: CapLocality

This field describes the interface capabilities of a TPM compliant to this specification. Some of the capabilities defined in this field may not be implemented in all TPMs. For example, a given Interface Type may support localities but not all implementations provide support for multiple localities. This field indicates which capability this
980 implementation supports. This is a bit field where each bit is defined to a particular capability.

Note: If the TPM supports multiple localities, it must support all of the features of locality arbitration including Seize.

1. If the TPM supports Locality 0 to 4, this field SHALL be set to 1

985 2. If the TPM only supports Locality 0, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

   a. The TPM SHALL support all of the fields and protocol for locality access.

   b. The TPM SHALL NOT support TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.Seize.

Field: CapFIFO

This state of this field indicates whether the TPM supports the FIFO interface or not.
990 This field is read-only.

1. If the TPM does not support the FIFO interface, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

2. If the TPM supports the FIFO interface, this field SHALL be set to 1.

3. Writes to this field are ignored.

Field: CapCRB

995 This state of this field indicates whether the TPM supports the CRB interface or not. This field is read-only.

1. If the TPM does not support the CRB interface, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

2. If the TPM supports the CRB interface, this field SHALL be set to 1.

3. Writes to this field are ignored.

1000   *Field: InterfaceSelector*

This field allows a caller to change the current TPM Interface. There are some requirements that must be met by any such implementation

1. This field MAY ONLY be changed if the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.CapFIFO and TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.CapCRB are both set to 1 and
1005   TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.IntfSelLock is cleared to 0.

2. Writes to this field SHALL be ignored if TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.IntfSelLock is set to 1.

3. If the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 0000b:

   a. A write to this field of 00b SHOULD be ignored.

1010   b. A write to this field of 01b SHALL change the active interface to CRB immediately following the next _TPM_INIT.

   c. The TPM SHALL update the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType field to 0001b.

4. If the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 0001b:

1015   a. A write of 01b to this field SHOULD be ignored.

   b. A write of 00b to this field SHALL change the active interface to TIS immediately following the next __TPM_INIT.

   c. The TPM SHALL update the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType field to 0000b.

1020   5. If the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 1111b, writes to this field SHALL be ignored.

Field: IntfSelLock

This field acts as a lock on the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceSelector field. If this field is 1, writes to TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceSelector are ignored. This field is
1025   reset to 0 by a _TPM_INIT.

1. This field MAY ONLY be changed if the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.CapFIFO and TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.CapCRB are both set to 1.

2. Reads to this field SHALL return the correct value.

3. A write of 0 to this field SHALL be ignored.

1030   4. A write of 1 to this field SHALL lock the TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceSelector field.

5. This field SHALL be cleared to 0 on _TPM_INIT.

5.4.2.2   CRB Interface Identifier Register

Table 14 —CRB Interface Identifier Register

Abbreviation:	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x
General Description:	Interface Identifier Register
Default	Specific to each revision

Bit Descriptions:			
63:48	Read Only	DID	Device ID – vendor specific
47:32	Read Only	VID	Vendor ID- assigned by TCG This is represented within the register in big-endian format. For example, a vendor ID of 0x1234 would be represented as: Bits 7:0 = 34 (0011 0100); Bits 15:8 = 12 (0001 0010).
31:24	Read Only	RID	Revision ID – specifies the revision of the component
23:20	Read Only	Reserved	Reads return 0
19	Read Write	IntfSelLock	0 – A write of this value is ignored 1 – A write of this value locks the InterfaceSelector field and prevents further changes. Field is reset to 0 on _TPM_INIT
18:17	Read Write	InterfaceSelector	00 – A write of this value changes the selected interface to FIFO 01 – A write of this value changes the selected interface to CRB This field may only be written if IntfSelLock is 0. Writes to this field take effect on next _TPM_INIT. Other values are reserved.
16:15	Read Only	CapIFRes	Reserved for future interfaces (since InterfaceSelector is a two-bit field), reads return 0
14	Read Only	CapCRB	0 – CRB interface is not supported. 1 – CRB interface is supported and may be selected.
13	Read Only	CapFIFO	0 – FIFO interface is not supported. 1 – FIFO interface is supported and may be selected.
12:11	Read Only	CapDataXferSizeSupport	00 – TPM supports 4-byte transfer size only. 01 – TPM supports 8-byte transfer size (includes 4-byte transfers). 10 – TPM supports 32-byte transfer size (includes 4- and 8-byte transfers). 11 – TPM supports 64-byte transfer size (includes 4-, 8- and 32-byte transfers).
10	Read Only	Reserved	Reserved Reads return 0
9	Read Only	CapCRBIdleBypass	0 – TPM supports fast transition from Idle to Command Ready state 1 – TPM supports transition from Command Completion directly to Command Ready Note: if this field is set to 1, the driver may need to set the cmdReady bit twice, as there is no indicator differentiates between Command Completion and Ready state in the CRB interface.
8	Read Only	CapLocality	0 – This interface supports Locality 0 only. 1 – This interface supports 5 localities (Localities 0-4).

7:4	Read Only	InterfaceVersion	0001 – CRB interface version 0. **NOTE: CRB initial Interface Version value of 0000 is for pre-existing CRB implementations.** 0000 – FIFO interface for TPM2.0.
3:0	Read Only	InterfaceType	0000 – FIFO interface as defined in PTP for TPM 2.0 is active. 0001 – CRB interface is active. 1111 – FIFO interface as defined in TIS1.3 is active (all other fields of this register are don't).

1035 *Field: Interface Type*

This field identifies the interface type currently active. While some TPMs may support either of these interfaces for product requirement and marketing purposes, only one interface can be active at a time. The selection of the interface is TPM Vendor Specific.

1040 This field applies to the entire TPM address range within the scope of the Interface Type. For example, if the Interface Type is FIFO, the FIFO Interface spans all the localities defined for the FIFO Interface which is address FED4_0000h – FED4_4FFFh.

The state of this field governs the behavior of the rest of this register. If Interface Type indicates a TIS 1.3 style Interface, no other field in this register is valid.

1. A value of 1111b in this field SHALL be interpreted to mean the TPM only supports
1045 a PC Client TPM Interface Specification v1.3 compliant FIFO interface.

2. If the TPM supports this specification, the value of this field SHALL NOT be 1111b.

3. Writes to this field SHALL be ignored.

4. If this field is set to 0000b:

   a. The TPM SHALL correctly report all other capabilities for TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x
1050   fields

   b. The TPM SHALL support TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceVersion, which SHALL be defined for the FIFO interface as 0000b.

   c. The TPM MAY deprecate TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.InterfaceVersion

5. If this field is set to 0001b:

1055 a. The TPM SHALL correctly report all other capabilities for TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x fields.

   b. The TPM SHALL support TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceVersion, which SHALL be defined for the CRB interface as 0001b.

   c. The TPM SHALL NOT support TPM_INTF_CAPBILITY_x.InterfaceVersion.

1060 6. If this field is set to 1111b, this register is not implemented.

NOTE: If this field is set to 1111b, the TPM may have implemented features from this specification on an interface built to comply with the TCG PC Client TPM Interface Specification version 1.3. If so, the features will be described in the TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x register. This register is not implemented in this case.

1065

Field: Interface Version

This field contains the versions for the interface types defined in this specification.

1. If TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceVersion = 1111b, this field is invalid.

2. If TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceVersion !=1111b:

1070
    a. The TPM SHALL report the version for the current active Interface type as indicated by the Interface Type field.

    b. When FIFO is active, the TPM SHALL support TPM_STS_x.commandCancel and TPM_STS_x.resetEstablishmentBit.

Field: CapLocality

1075
This field describes the interface capabilities of a TPM compliant to this specification. Some of the capabilities defined in this field may not be implemented in all TPMs. For example, a given Interface Type may support localities but not all implementations provide support for multiple localities. This field indicates which capability this implementation supports. This is a bit field where each bit is defined to a particular
1080
capability.

1. If the TPM supports Locality 0 to 4, this field SHALL be set to 1.

2. If the TPM only supports Locality 0, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

    a. The TPM SHALL support all of the fields and protocol for locality access.

    b. The TPM SHALL NOT support TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.Seize.

1085
Field: CapCRBIdleBypass

This field describes the behavior of the TPM in transitioning states from Command Completion to Ready. If this field is set to a 0, a TPM will transition from Command Completion to Idle and on receiving a write of 1 to cmdReady, will transition to Ready. A TPM with this field set 1 will bypass the Idle state and go directly from Command
1090
Completion to Ready. Because there is no differentiating indicator in the interface between Command Completion and Ready, a driver will need to keep track of the state it leaves the TPM in. It is expected that drivers will only exercise this bypass mechanism when multiple commands are queued up for the TPM, as the TPM may perform necessary background processing while in Idle.

1095
1. If the TPM supports bypassing Idle state, this field SHALL be set to 1.

2. If the TPM supports fast transition from Idle to Ready, this field SHALL be set to 0.

Field: CapDataXferSizeSupport

This field is only supported in the CRB specific Interface Identifier Register. It provides the same information added to the PC Client TPM Interface Specification for
1100
TPM 1.2 v 1.3 to support larger transfer sizes on the SPI bus.

The state of this field indicates the size of transfers supported by the TPM on the hardware interface.

Field: CapFIFO

This state of this field indicates whether the TPM supports the FIFO interface or not.
1105
This field is read-only.

1. If the TPM does not support the FIFO interface, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

2. If the TPM supports the FIFO interface, this field SHALL be set to 1.

3. Writes to this field are ignored.

Field: CapCRB

This state of this field indicates whether the TPM supports the CRB interface or not. This field is read-only.

1. If the TPM does not support the CRB interface, this field SHALL be cleared to 0.

2. If the TPM supports the CRB interface, this field SHALL be set to 1.

3. Writes to this field are ignored.

Field: InterfaceSelector

This field allows a caller to change the current TPM Interface.   There are some requirements that must be met by any such implementation

1. This field MAY ONLY be changed if the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.CapFIFO and TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.CapCRB   are   both   set   to   1   and TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.IntfSelLock is cleared to 0.

2. Writes to this field SHALL be ignored if TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.IntfSelLock is set to 1.

3. If the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 0000b:

   Then:

   a. A write to this field of 00 SHOULD be ignored.

   b. A write to this field of 01 SHALL change the active interface to CRB immediately following the next _TPM_INIT.

   c. The TPM SHALL update the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType field to 0001b.

4. If the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 0001b:

   Then:

   a. A write of 11b to this field SHOULD be ignored.

   b. A write of 00b to this field SHALL change the active interface to TIS immediately following the next _TPM_INIT.

   c. The TPM SHALL update the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType field to 0000b.

5. If the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType field is 1111b, writes to this field SHALL be ignored.

Field: IntfSelLock

This field acts as a lock on the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceSelector field. If this field is 1, writes to TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.IntefaceSelector are ignored. This field is reset to 0 by a _TPM_INIT.

1. This field MAY ONLY be changed if the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.CapFIFO and TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.CapCRB are both set to 1.

2. Reads to this field SHALL return the correct value.

3. A write of 0 to this field SHALL be ignored.

4. A write of 1 to this field SHALL lock the TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceSelector
1145   field.

5. This field SHALL be cleared to 0 on _TPM_INIT.

5.5   TPM's Software Interaction

When a platform is powered on, platform hardware issues a __TPM_INIT to the TPM.
After each _TPM_INIT, the platform must issue a TPM2_Startup command to the TPM
1150   before issuing any other TPM command, with the exception of the
HASH_START/_DATA/_END interface commands described in Section 4.2 Locality-
Controlled Functions.   The command and startup type informs the TPM how to
initialize itself, for example, by informing the TPM to restore or clear the state of the
PCRs that may retain their state across an S3 suspend. The platform firmware is
1155   required to perform the TPM2_Startup command.   With respect to locality, it is
important to understand that the locality using the TPM and its interface is
architected to be a non-preemptive use of the TPM. When there are multiple software
users spanning multiple localities, the following explains the handshake mechanism.

Each software agent, when it wishes to use the TPM, must request use of the locality it
1160   wishes to access. If the TPM is idle, the first agent that sets this field will become the
user. The TPM must set active locality to the locality that gains access to TPM. All
other localities that have requested use of the TPM must poll on the TPM_ACCESS_x
or the TPM_LOC_STS_x register to determine when they are granted access to the
TPM.

1165   When the currently active locality is finished with the TPM, it must relinquish locality.
The TPM must look at all pending requests to use the TPM and grant the access to the
highest locality with a pending request.

If software, for some reason, decides a lesser locality's software is not playing fair or is
hung (by exceeding the maximum timeout value as specified by the TSS), then it can
1170   seize the TPM from the current user, as long as that user is at a lower locality. This
forces the TPM to stop honoring cycles from the other locality, and only honor the new
locality's requests.

5.5.1   Interface-Agnostic functions

Command aborts are interface dependent and are defined within the Interface specific
1175   sections of this specification.

5.5.1.1   Bus Aborts

For LPC, an LPC Abort cycle requires that the cycle have no effect on the TPM. There
are two possible implementations, either of which is acceptable:

1. The TPM may simply not drive a valid LPC SYNC. This will cause the chipset to
1180   return FFh to the CPU for reads. The write data will be dropped.

2. For writes, the TPM may accept them and do nothing with the writes. The TPM will
not provide any TPM-Response to these writes, nor does it provide any indication
that it has seen a write but dropped it. For reads, the TPM, if it responds with a
valid LPC SYNC, must return FFh as the data. This mimics a true LPC or PCI
1185   Master Abort from the CPU's perspective.

For SPI, there is no analog to the LPC SYNC signal. To provide a similar mechanism to the LPC Abort cycle, this specification defines a protocol using MISO.

LPC Aborts:

1. An LPC Abort cycle SHALL cause the TPM to ignore the current LPC bus cycle.

SPI Aborts:

1. For Read Cycles, the TPM SHALL abort a cycle by driving 1 on MISO and continue to hold MISO at 1 until its CS# signal is deasserted.

2. For Write Cycles, the TPM SHALL abort a cycle by driving a 1 on MISO, then drop all incoming data.

3. The TPM MAY use the standard SPI Wait mechanism, as defined in Section 6.4.5 Flow Control, to insert a wait state while decoding the cycle before issuing an abort.

5.5.1.2   Failure Mode

Several conditions can cause the TPM to enter a specifically defined state called "failure mode". These conditions and the behavior of the TPM are defined in the TPM2 Library Specification and are not reproduced here. This section defines additional considerations specific to the behavior of the TPM Interface.

Notes on the Normative text below:

Normative 2: This allows the system software to perform the allowed remediation actions on the TPM. The requirement to allow changing locality exists because the TPM's locality when it entered failure mode may not be the appropriate locality for performing the allowed remediation.

While the TPM is in a failure mode:

1. In addition to the requirements called out in the TPM2 Library Specification, the HASH_START, HASH_DATA and HASH_END interface commands SHALL appear to the caller as dropped writes (i.e., they are not allowed to hang or suspend the system), but SHALL NOT perform any actions on the TPM such as those specified in Section 4.2.1 DRTM Execution Sequence.

2. All FIFO registers SHALL remain fully functional including the ability to change locality.

3. All CRB registers SHALL remain fully functional including the ability to change locality.

5.5.1.3   Command Duration

It is important to distinguish between the two terms: duration and timeout. Duration
is the amount of time for a TPM to execute a command once the TPM has received the
command's complete set of bytes and the software starts the operation by writing a 1
to TPM_STS_x.tpmGo or TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Start. Duration has no relationship to the
timings of the interface protocols. Timeouts, referenced below, are not related to the
interface timeouts, as defined in Section 5.5.1.4 Interface Timeouts) The timeouts
defined in Table 15 —Command Timing below, are defined to allow driver writers to
know when to issue a command cancel to attempt to recover a TPM. If a TPM fails to
complete the command within the timeout defined in Table 15, the driver may safely
assume the TPM has had a critical failure and is non-recoverable. The duration and
timeout for any command performing a TPM2_NV_Read are defined for the pre-OS
environment only. Some TPM implementations may rely on OS drivers to access non-
volatile memory in an OS-present environment, and as such may not be able to
comply with these timings.

During a platform's early boot phase, performance is critical and resources are limited.
For this reason, constraints are placed on commands that are typically required
during this phase to eliminate the need to compensate for implementation differences
of different TPMs. Since the same platform requirements drive the reasons for making
commands available before a self-test has completed, the commands listed in this
section are similar to those in the Section 5.5.1.6 <u>Self-Test and Early Platform
Initialization</u>.

1. Command Duration is defined as the time between the TPM's receipt of a 1 to
   TPM_STS_x.tpmGo or TPM_CRB_CRTL_x.Start and the TPM completing the
   command as evidenced by:

   a. FIFO Interface: the TPM sets both TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and
      TPM_STS_x.stsValid fields to a 1.

   b. CRB Interface: the TPM clears TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Start to 0.

2. For the commands listed in Table 15 below a TPM SHOULD not exceed the
   Duration values and SHALL NOT exceed the Timeout values.

   Note: The timings in Table 15 assume that any algorithms required for these
   functions do not need to be tested during the execution of the command, see
   Section 5.5.1.6 <u>Self-Test and Early Platform Initialization</u>.

Table 15 —Command Timing

Commands	Duration [ms]	Timeout [ms]
Signals		
_TPM_Hash_Start	20	750
_TPM_Hash_Data	20	750
_TPM_Hash_End	20	750
Startup		
TPM2_Startup	20	750
Testing		
TPM2_SelfTest(fullTest=YES)	1000	2000
TPM2_SelfTest(fullTest=NO)	20	750
Random Number Generator		
TPM2_GetRandom	750	2000
Hash/HMAC/Event Sequences		
TPM2_HashSequenceStart	20	750
TPM2_SequenceUpdate	20	750
TPM2_SequenceComplete	20	750
TPM2_EventSequenceComplete	20	750
Signature Verification		
TPM2_VerifySignature	750	2000
Integrity Collection (PCR)		
TPM2_PCR_Extend	20	750
Hierarchy Commands		
TPM2_HierarchyControl	750	2000
TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth	750	2000
Capability Commands		
TPM2_GetCapability	20	750
Non-volatile Storage		
TPM2_NV_Read	750	2000

5.5.1.4   Interface Timeouts

The term timeout, in this section, applies to timings between various states or transitions within the interface protocol. Interface timeout values are not related to duration (see Section 5.5.1.3 Command Duration).

Because of the variations between implementations, it is not practical to specify timeout values that apply to all implementations. Efficient software must have the means to provide optimizations; therefore, software should be able to determine, with some level of granularity, when a state transition is expected to complete and when the software should determine the TPM has failed. These timings are called timeouts. The timeouts have been broken into four categories, each with a label.

This specification defines a maximum value for each of these timeouts as defined in Table 16 below. **Note:** TIMEOUT_B applies to the time it takes to cancel a command. As canceling a command affects more than the interface, this is the only timeout that applies to higher levels of the TPM stack.

1. There are four timeout values designated: TIMEOUT_A, TIMEOUT_B, TIMEOUT_C, and TIMEOUT_D.

2. The default values for the timeouts SHALL be as shown.

Table 16 — Definition of Interface Timeouts

TIMEOUT Label	Default Timeouts
TIMEOUT_A	750 milliseconds
TIMEOUT_B	2,000 milliseconds
TIMEOUT_C	200 milliseconds
TIMEOUT_D	30 milliseconds

5.5.1.5   _TPM_INIT

The command __TPM_INIT is not an actual command with a defined ordinal and set of parameters; rather, it is an indication to the TPM that the Static RTM is being reset and that the RTR and RTS should also be reset. On a PC Client, this is performed using a hardware-based signal.

Note: This distinction is made because it is conceivable that other architectures might use other methods for performing this function.

For a TPM implementation using the TPM Packaging specified in Section 8.1 _TPM_INIT, __TPM_INIT is indicated by the transition of LRESET# or SPI_RST# pin from low to high. There is no requirement to use this packaging; therefore, it is up to the TPM manufacturer to define the hardware-based signal that performs this function.

1. The TPM SHALL implement a hardware-based signal for __TPM_INIT.

2. If the TPM uses the TPM Packaging specified in Section 8.1 TPM Packaging, this SHALL be done on the transition from low to high of the reset pin (LRESET# for LPC or SPI_RST# for SPI).

3. If the TPM does not use the TPM Packaging specified in Section8.1 TPM Packaging, the TPM Manufacturer SHALL define the pin used for _TPM_INIT.

5.5.1.6   Self-Test and Early Platform Initialization

During the time-sensitive phase of a PC Client's startup procedure, only a small subset of the available commands is likely to be necessary. Therefore, this specification requires the TPM to perform any necessary self-test on these commands required to make them available upon completion of __TPM_INIT.

The Design Principles documents require each platform specific specification state the maximum time a TPM can take to continue its self-test time. Due to variations in security requirements and implementations of TPM, it is difficult to mandate this to the satisfaction of all TPMs for all PC Client implementations. However, the generally accepted constraints of this platform's architecture and applications target the 1 to 2 second timeframe. PC Client platform manufacturers are advised to keep this particular aspect of the TPM's specification in mind when selecting a TPM for applicability to the platform's targeted use.

Graphically, the initialization sequence is as follows:
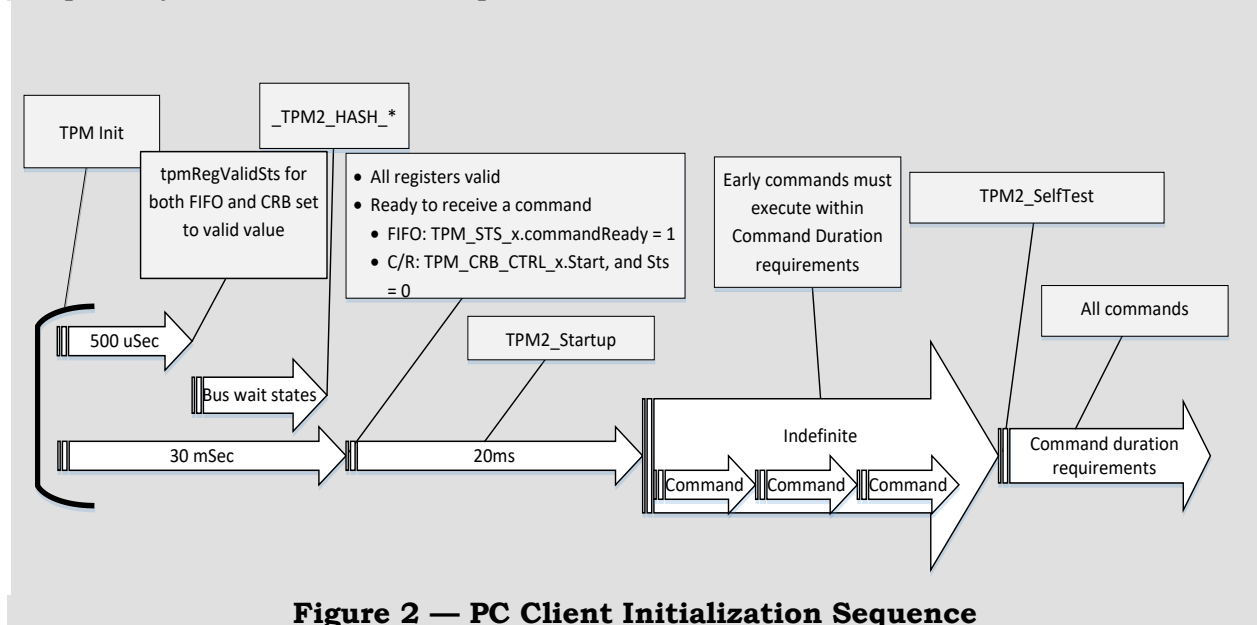
Figure 2 — PC Client Initialization Sequence

1. After __TPM_INIT, a TPM SHALL test all internal functions that are necessary to perform the following commands necessary for early boot operations. The following operations SHALL be available after __TPM_INIT and before a call to TPM2_SelfTest

   a. TPM2_HashSequenceStart

   b. TPM2_SequenceUpdate

   c. TPM2_EventSequenceComplete

   d. TPM2_SequenceComplete

   e. TPM2_PCR_Extend

   f. TPM2_Startup

   g. TPM2_SelfTest

   h. _TPM2_HASH_START / _DATA / _END

   i. TPM2_GetRandom

1315   j. TPM2_HierarchyControl

        k. TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth

        l. TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy

        m. TPM2_GetCapability

        n. TPM2_NV_Read

1320 2. The maximum time to continue TPM self-test after receipt of TPM2_SelfTest
      SHOULD be less than 1 second.

5.5.1.7 Data Buffer Size

Software must be aware of the maximum amount of data it can transfer to the TPM in
one command. This is most relevant to the NV Storage functions where relatively large
1325 amounts of storage area can be defined by the software. The size of the TPM data
buffer does not prevent larger areas from being defined. It means, however, that if an
area is defined that requires more data than the input buffer can accommodate in one
transaction, the software must break up the write into smaller pieces. This is possible
because the NV Write commands allow for an offset.

1330 Note that there is no specified output buffer size. The TPM may leverage the same
buffer for command and response data. If TPM has separate buffers, the TPM will
return an error on the command before exceeding its output buffer size.

TPMs are allowed to provide larger input buffer size to increase performance.

1. The TPM SHALL support a data buffer size large enough to support the largest
1335   implemented command.

2. The TPM MAY support a data buffer size of up to 3968 bytes.

5.5.1.8 Errors

In general, there are four types of errors for the TPM, as outlined in the following
cases:

1340 1. Errors that the TPM detects and understands and that force it into Failure Mode:

        a. In this mode, the TPM responds correctly to all register reads or writes.

        b. The TPM provides a TPM-defined Response to security operations. This
            response should be one of the error return codes defined in the TPM Library
            Specification, e.g. TPM2_RC_FAILURE.

1345   c. The TPM allows certain TPM-defined transactions, e.g. TPM2_GetTestResult, to
            return a response that indicates the particular error, or provides other TPM
            status information.

2. Errors that the TPM detects and that seem to be attacks on the hardware interface:

        a. The TPM completely stops responding and enters Shutdown because of these
1350   events.

            i.   The TPM may not respond to reads or writes of the physical interface.

            ii. If the CRB interface is implemented, the TPM may return a default
                 TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Status value of 0001h.

            iii. The TPM may not provide any response.

1355   iv. All accesses to the TPM in this state should result in a bus Abort (as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts) until a TPM reset has occurred.

3. Transmission or protocol errors:

a. TPM registers and software behavior have been defined to both identify and correct overruns or underruns on both reads and writes.

1360   4. Errors that the TPM does not detect, but cause it to hang or shutdown.

a. For case 1, Failure Mode, there is no need for a status field or interrupt, since the Response contains all the information that software needs to understand the TPM state. Case 1 may include things such as the RNG self-test failed.

b. For case 2, Shutdown, on a FIFO interface, there is no need for a status field or
1365   interrupt since an LPC TPM does not respond to any cycles at all and an SPI TPM aborts all cycles, as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts. Reading FFh from TPM_ACCESS_x indicates this state. In addition to the behavior defined by the physical interface, the CRB interface provides for the TPM to respond to reads of the Status field with a default value. TPM's may respond with this
1370   default value or may timeout on the read request.

c. For case 3, the interface has been defined with the status fields needed to detect overruns and underruns, and provides a mechanism to recover from those errors if they are transient. Software should time out after some number of retries.

1375   d. Case 4 obviously needs no status field or other indication. Note that software may be able to determine that the TPM is in a hung or error state, even though the TPM cannot. For instance, if the TPM hangs in a microcode loop, then status fields would never be updated. Software could detect this case if it has sent a command and the TPM's registers are not updated within the required
1380   timeout.

The requirement for all errors is that system security or secrets cannot be compromised.

Therefore, this specification lumps all errors relating to the TPM into one of the first three categories. For instance, assume there is a long power glitch. The TPM can treat
1385   this like an attack and, for LPC TPM's, simply cease operation, and SPI TPM's bus abort all cycles, or it could go to the Error Mode and return error responses to all commands. The exact condition that forces the TPM into one error state or the other is vendor specific.

This specification defines the TPM's behavior for protocol or transmission errors. It is
1390   beyond the scope of this specification to define every hardware or software attack. It is within the scope of this specification to define the protocol for dealing with the errors.

As long as the TPM is in states 1-3 above, or in the working state, it meets the requirements of this specification. The TPM must not have any point where it allows secrets or a response other than an error to be returned when it knows there has been
1395   an error. It may use any of the above sequences to enforce this rule.

Since the transmission errors are taken care of by the protocol, the TPM has only two options for other errors: go into Failure Mode or to Shutdown Mode. Since each vendor's TPM will have different physical implementations, there is no good way to precisely define each error and whether it should go into Failure Mode or Shutdown. Therefore, it is vendor specific whether a particular error causes Failure Mode or Shutdown Mode responses. The TPM Library Specification prescribes what responses the TPM must return when in Failure Mode. The TPM Library Specification defines one case of an attack as causing Failure Mode. In this case, a fingerprint check error for TPM2_ContextLoad, the TPM should go into Shutdown Mode instead.

Software has two cases to deal with. If the TPM has shutdown, this is detected by TPM registers not being updated within the appropriate timeout, see Section 5.5.1.4 Timeouts, and the platform should be rebooted. If the TPM returns Error Responses, then the software should already be designed to handle this case.

Since the recovery for Shutdown Mode is system reset and the recovery for Failure Mode is also system reset, there is no need to define in more detail how the TPM should handle each error. In the future, if an error has a more graceful recovery mechanism, then the specification will need to be more precise on how the TPM must handle the error. Today, the software stack will simply detect a timeout in the protocol and reset the system or it will detect that the TPM is only returning Error Responses for TPM commands and reset the system.

Note: Software attacks should never cause the TPM to enter Shutdown Mode. Shutdown Mode is intended to counter hardware attacks and should not persist through a _TPM_INIT unless the hardware attack also persists.

1. In the event of any error, the TPM SHALL NOT compromise system security or secrets.

2. If the TPM detects an error:

   a. The TPM SHALL respond correctly to Register Reads and Writes; i.e., it must either correctly read/write the register or perform a bus abort; but it SHALL not hang the bus.

   b. The TPM MAY respond with a defined TPM Error Response to Security Operations.

   c. The TPM MAY respond by entering Failure mode.

3. If the TPM detects a hardware attack,

   a. The TPM SHALL enter Shutdown Mode until a subsequent _TPM_INIT

   b. The TPM MAY respond to a read of TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Status with a value of 0001h.

4. Following _TPM_INIT, the TPM SHALL clear Shutdown Mode or Failure Mode unless the attack or error condition remains.

5.5.2   FIFO Interface Requirements

1435 ### 5.5.2.1   FIFO Register Space Addresses

Table 17 lists the addresses decoded by the TPM when FIFO is implemented. The TPM_ACCESS_x register has multiple, separate and unique instances, one per locality. The other register addresses alias to a single register with the locality used to determine if accesses are permitted or aborted as defined in Section 5.5.2.3.1
1440 Command Aborts.

Table 17 — Allocation of Register Space for FIFO TPM Access

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 0		
0000h	TPM_ACCESS_0	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality.
0007h-0001h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
000Bh-0008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_0	Interrupt configuration register
000Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_0	SIRQ vector to be used by the TPM
000Dh-000Dh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
000Fh-000Eh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0013h-0010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_0	Shows which interrupt has occurred
0017h-0014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0	Provides the information about supported interrupts and the characteristic of the burstCount register of the particular TPM.
001Bh-0018h	TPM_STS_0	Status Register. Provides status of the TPM
0023h-001Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
00027h-0024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_0	ReadFIFO or WriteFIFO, depending on the current bus cycle (read or write). These four addresses are aliased to one inside the TPM. **Note:** The TPM is not required to check that the addresses on the LPC bus are incrementing modulo-4, even though platform hardware would most likely send it that way. The read or write data could be performed by accessing 0024h repeatedly without using the other addresses.
002Fh-0028h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0033h-0030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0	Provides information on the interface type(s) supported by the TPM. This register is aliased across localities
007Fh-0034h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0083h-0080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_0	Extended ReadFIFO or WriteFIFO, depending on the current bus cycle (read or write). Transactions to this address may be any size from 1 byte to the size reported in TPM_INTF_Capability_x.DataTransferSizeSupport (see section 5.5.2.7 Interface Capability). The TPM SHOULD alias this address with the TPM_DATA_FIFO at offset 0x0024
00BFh-0084h	Reserved	Reserved. These addresses are reserved by the chipset. The TPM should not respond to accesses to these addresses. Reserving this address range ensures that software which issues writes larger than 1 byte to offset 0080h doesn't inadvertently encounter a register in the TPM in this space.
0EFFh-00C0h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0F03h-0F00h	TPM_DID_VID_0	Vendor and device ID

Offset	Register Name	Description
0F04h	TPM_RID_0	Revision ID
0F7Fh-0F05h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0F8Fh-0F80h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
0FFFh-0F90h		Vendor-defined configuration registers
Locality 1		
1000h	TPM_ACCESS_1	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality.
1007h-1001h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
100Bh-1008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_1	Same as TPM_INT_ENABLE_0
100Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_1	Same as TPM_INT_VECTOR_0
100Fh-100Dh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1013h-1010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_1	Same as TPM_INT_STATUS_0
1017h-1014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_1	Same as TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0
101Bh-1018h	TPM_STS_1	Same as TPM_STS_0
1023h-101Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1027h-1024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_1	Same as TPM_DATA_FIFO_0
102Fh-1028h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1033h-1030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_1	Same as TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0
107Fh-1034h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1083h-1080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_1	Same as TPM_XDATA_FIFO_1
10BFh-1084h	Reserved	Reserved. These addresses are reserved by the chipset. The TPM should not respond to accesses to these addresses. Reserving this address range ensures that software which issues writes larger than 1 byte to offset 0080h doesn't inadvertently encounter a register in the TPM in this space.
1EFFh-10C0h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1F03h-1F00h	TPM_DID_VID_1	Same as TPM_DID_VID_0
1F04h	TPM_RID_1	Same as TPM_RID_0
1F7Fh-1F05h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1F83h-1F80h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1F87h-1F84h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1F8Bh-1F88h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1F8Fh-1F8Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
1FFFh-1F90h	Reserved	Vendor-defined configuration registers

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 2		
2000h	TPM_ACCESS_2	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality.
2007h-2001h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
200Bh-2008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_2	Same as TPM_INT_ENABLE_0
200Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_2	Same as TPM_INT_VECTOR_0
200Fh-200Dh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2013h-2010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_2	Same as TPM_INT_STATUS_0
2017h-2014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_2	Same as TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0
201Bh-2018h	TPM_STS_2	Same as TPM_STS_0
2023h-201Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2027h-2024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_2	Same as TPM_DATA_FIFO_0
202Fh-2028h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2033h-2030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_2	Same as TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0
207Fh-2034h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2083h-2080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_2	Same as TPM_XDATA_FIFO_0
20BFh-2084h	Reserved	Reserved. These addresses are reserved by the chipset. The TPM should not respond to accesses to these addresses. Reserving this address range ensures that software which issues writes larger than 1 byte to offset 0080h doesn't inadvertently encounter a register in the TPM in this space.
2EFFh-20C0h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2F03h-2F00h	TPM_DID_VID_2	Same as TPM_DID_VID_0
2F04h	TPM_RID_2	Same as TPM_RID_0
2F7Fh-2F05h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2F83h-2F80h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2F87h-2F84h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2F8Bh-2F88h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2F8Fh-2F8Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
2FFFh-2F90h		Vendor-defined configuration registers

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 3		
3000h	TPM_ACCESS_3	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality.
3007h-3001h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
300Bh-30008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_3	Same as TPM_INT_ENABLE_0
300Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_3	Same as TPM_INT_VECTOR_0
300Fh-300Dh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3013h-3010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_3	Same as TPM_INT_STATUS_0
3017h-3014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_3	Same as TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0
301Bh-3018h	TPM_STS_3	Same as TPM_STS_0
3023h-301Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3027h-3024h	TPM_DATA_FIFO_3	Same as TPM_DATA_FIFO_0
302Fh-3028h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3033h-3030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_3	Same as TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0
307Fh-3034h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3083h-3080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_3	Same as TPM_XDATA_FIFO_0
30BFh-3084h	Reserved	Reserved. These addresses are reserved by the chipset. The TPM should not respond to accesses to these addresses. Reserving this address range ensures that software which issues writes larger than 1 byte to offset 0080h doesn't inadvertently encounter a register in the TPM in this space.
3EFFh-30C0h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3F03h-3F00h	TPM_DID_VID_3	Same as TPM_DID_VID_0
3F04h	TPM_RID_3	Same as TPM_RID_0
3F7Fh-3F05h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3F83h-3F80h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3F87h-3F84h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3F8Bh-3F88h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3F8Fh-3F8Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
3FFFh-3F90h		Vendor-defined configuration registers

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 4		
4000h	TPM_ACCESS_4	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality.
4007h-4001h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
400Bh-4008h	TPM_INT_ENABLE_4	Same as TPM_INT_ENABLE_0
400Ch	TPM_INT_VECTOR_4	Same as TPM_INT_VECTOR_0
400Fh-400Dh	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4013h-4010h	TPM_INT_STATUS_4	Same as TPM_INT_STATUS_0
4017h-4014h	TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_4	Same as TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_0
401Bh-4018h	TPM_STS_4	Same as TPM_STS_0
401Fh-401Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4023h-4020h	TPM_HASH_END	This signals the end of the hash operation. See Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions for detailed description This command SHALL be done on the LPC bus as a single write to 4020h. Writes to 4021h to 4023h are not decoded by the TPM.
4027h-4024h	TPM_HASH_DATA/ TPM_DATA_FIFO_4	Same as TPM_DATA_FIFO_0 except that this location is also used as the data port for the Locality 4 HASH procedure as defined in Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions.
402Fh4028h	TPM_HASH_START	This signals the start of the hash operation. See Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions for detailed description This command SHALL be done on the LPC bus as a single write to 4028h. Writes to 4029h to 402Fh are not decoded by TPM.
4033h-4030h	TPM_INTERFACE_ID_4	Same as TPM_INTERFACE_ID_0
407Fh-4034h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4083h-4080h	TPM_XDATA_FIFO_4	Same as TPM_XDATA_FIFO_0
40BFh-4084h	Reserved	Reserved. These addresses are reserved by the chipset. The TPM should not respond to accesses to these addresses. Reserving this address range ensures that software which issues writes larger than 1 byte to offset 0080h doesn't inadvertently encounter a register in the TPM in this space.
4EFFh-40C0h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4F03h-4F00h	TPM_DID_VID_4	Same as TPM_DID_VID_0
4F04h	TPM_RID_4	Same as TPM_RID_0
4F7Fh-4F05h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4F83h-4F80h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4F87h-4F84h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4F8Bh-4F88h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4F8Fh-4F8Ch	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
4FFFh-4F90h		Vendor-defined configuration registers
Non-locality Specific Registers		
5FFFh-5000h	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
All addresses not defined in the table above		Reserved, reads return FFh; writes are dropped.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 67
May 22, 2017

Subsequent sections provide implementation details on the defined registers. Note that registers which are aliased may have multiple versions; e.g., TPM_STS_x represents TPM_STS_0, TPM_STS_1, TPM_STS_2, TPM_STS_3, and TPM_STS_4.

1445   1. The DID/VID, RID, and all the TCG and vendor-specific registers MAY have only one physical copy.

      a. If so implemented, these registers SHALL be accessible from any locality.

      b. If implemented as separate physical registers, each copy SHALL hold the same data. See Section 6.1 <u>FIFO Interface Locality Usage per Register</u> and Table 39<u>.</u>

1450   2. Handling Command FIFOs

Before issuing a command to the TPM, the software reads the TPM_STS_x register to see if the TPM's state allows it to accept commands.

Software sends commands to the TPM and reads results from the TPM using a data FIFO. When the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field is > 0, the data FIFO is ready
1455 to accept more data of a command (during a command's send phase) or return more data from a command (response from a command completion). Since the TPM is not allowed to drop a cycle because of an internal stall, if the TPM cannot accept a write cycle or respond to a read cycle, it must insert wait states on the bus using the mechanism appropriate to the bus interface, i.e. stall the
1460 LPC bus using standard LPC wait syncs or insert one or more SPI wait cycles. See Section 6.4.5 <u>Flow Control</u>, for a detailed description of burstCount.

The FIFO is only a stack of bytes going into and out of the TPM. TPM_STS_x.burstCount indicates only the depth of the command FIFO, not the direction nor whether the TPM expects more data to be sent or received.
1465 TPM_STS_x.Expect and TPM_STS_x.DataAvail fields indicate to the software when the TPM expects more data during a command's send phase or has more data to be read during a read results phase.

      i. The TPM SHALL maintain the TPM_STS_x register so that software can determine whether the TPM is in a state where it can accept commands. The
1470 TPM SHALL NOT drop a cycle because of an internal stall. If the TPM cannot accept a write or read cycle, then the TPM SHALL stall the bus using the appropriate method for the bus (standard LPC Wait Syncs or SPI wait cycles).

5.5.2.2   Completion Command Details

1475 ### 5.5.2.2.1   Command Send

To send a command the software must first set TPM_STS_x.commandReady = 1. Upon receipt of TPM_STS_x.commandReady, the TPM may set TPM_STS_x.Expect = 1 indicating it is ready to receive the command. When the data FIFO is ready to begin receiving the command data, the TPM sets TPM_STS_x.burstCount > 0. The TPM uses
1480 TPM_STS_x.burstCount field to throttle the data into the data FIFO.

The TPM keeps TPM_STS_x.Expect = 1 until it receives all the expected data for the command. When the TPM receives all the data for the command (the TPM can calculate this using the command size parameter which is within the first 10 bytes of the command) it sets TPM_STS_x.Expect = 0 indicating to the software that all data
1485 expected has been received.

Page 68
May 22, 2017

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

The software signals the TPM to begin executing the command by writing a 1 to the TPM_STS_x_tpmGo field. Upon receipt of TPM_STS_x_tpmGo = 1, the TPM begins executing the command.

1. Upon receipt of TPM_STS_x.commandReady, the TPM SHALL prepare to receive a command.

2. When ready, the TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.commandReady = 1 and the TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.burstCount > 0 to indicate to software that it can begin writing command data to the data FIFO. The TPM MAY set TPM_STS_x.Expect = 1.

3. When the TPM receives the first Byte of the command data, it SHALL set TPM_STS_x.commandReady = 0 and TPM_STS_x.Expect = 1 as an indication to the software that it expects further command data. The TPM SHALL use TPM_STS_x.burstCount to indicate to software whether the data FIFO can accept more data.

4. The TPM SHALL keep TPM_STS_x.Expect = 1 until it has received all of the data for this command. When the TPM reads the last byte of data from its data FIFO the TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.Expect = 0.

5. The TPM MAY ignore TPM_STS_x.tpmGo until TPM_STS_x.Expect is set to 0.

5.5.2.2.2 Data Availability

When a command completes, the TPM puts the results into the data FIFO, which is read via the TPM_DATA_FIFO_x register. Once the TPM has data that can be read, the TPM sets TPM_STS_x.dataAvail = 1 and it remains 1 until all data from the command response are read. After the last byte of the response is read, the TPM sets TPM_STS_x.dataAvail = 0. The TPM uses TPM_STS_x.burstCount field to throttle the response out of the data FIFO.

After sending a command, the software reads the TPM_STS_x.dataAvail register to see if the response from the TPM is available, indicating a command has completed. If the TPM_STS_x.dataAvail field is 1, at least 1 byte of the command response data is available.

1. Upon completing a command the TPM SHALL place the command's response data into the data FIFO.

2. The TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.dataAvail = 1 as an indication to the software that the command has completed and data is available to be read from the data FIFO. When the last byte of the response data is read from the data FIFO the TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.dataAvail = 0.

Note: A value of 1 only indicates that there is at least one byte in the data FIFO; it is not an indicator that the data can be read from the data FIFO. I.e., this is not the final indicator to software that it can begin reading from the data FIFO. Software must also wait until TPM_STS_x.burstCount > 0, see below.

3. The TPM SHALL set TPM_STS_x.burstCount > 0 to indicate to software that it can begin reading the response data from the data FIFO. Once the software has started to read the response from the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL use TPM_STS_x.burstCount as an indicator to software that data is available in the data FIFO.

5.5.2.3   Interface Specific Aborts

1530 **5.5.2.3.1   Command Aborts**

There are several ways to cause a TPM to abort an executing command: TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize,   TPM_STS_x.commandReady,   and TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality. Because of implementation differences and the non-deterministic nature of some commands that may be executing, the TPM may not be

1535 able to respond to a command abort immediately or within a predictable time. This non-deterministic behavior causes driver design difficulties because the driver will not be able to distinguish between a TPM waiting normally and a TPM that has encountered an error and is not responsive. Therefore, a maximum amount of time is specified so TPM manufacturers have a design parameter that drivers can rely upon.

1540 The TPM's internal state after an abort may be set to the state of the TPM prior to the aborted command or to the state it would have entered after completing the aborted command.

The purpose for a command abort when setting TPM_ACCESS_x.SEIZE or x.activeLocality is that the TPM cannot be allowed to "leak" information between

1545 localities. In other words, the response to a command sent from one locality cannot be returned to another locality.

Note: Because there is no requirement for a TPM to handle more than one operation at a time, there can be no actual and standardized TPM command to cause an abort. The method for signaling an abort to the TPM is by writing to specific registers.

1550 1. Upon a successful command abort, the TPM SHALL stop the currently executing command, clear the FIFOs, and transition to idle state.

2. The following operations SHALL cause a command abort:

a. Writing a 1 to TPM_STS_x.commandReady during the execution of a command.

b. Writing a 1 to TPM_STS_x.commandReady during the receipt of a command but
1555   before execution of a command.

c. Writing a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize ,but only when successful.

d. Writing a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality.

e. Successful completion of the HASH_START per Section 4.2, Locality-Controlled Functions.

1560 3. The TPM internal state MAY either be in the pre-aborted command or post-aborted command state and SHALL not be in any intermediate state.

4. For commands indicated as short or medium duration (i.e., those that do not cause key generation), the TPM SHALL respond to an abort within TIMEOUT_A. For commands indicated as long duration or those that cause key generation, the TPM
1565   SHALL respond to a request to abort the command within TIMEOUT_B.

5.5.2.4   Access Register

The purpose of this register is to allow the processes operating at the various localities to share the TPM. The basic notion is that any locality can request access to the TPM by setting the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field using its assigned TPM_ACCESS_x register address. If there is no currently set locality, the TPM sets current locality to the requesting one and allows operations only from that locality. If the TPM is currently at another locality, the TPM keeps the request pending until the currently executing locality frees the TPM. Software relinquishes the TPM's locality by writing a 1 to the TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality field. Upon release, the TPM honors the highest locality request pending. If there is no pending request, the TPM enters the "free" state.

There may be circumstances where the access to the TPM is "held" by either crashed or ill-behaved software. For this reason, the TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize field may be used. It is generally assumed that software executing at higher level localities is more trusted and less prone to crashing and better behaved at relinquishing the TPM. The TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize field allows higher-level localities to gain control of the TPM. This method, however, should be the exception rather than the common method for gaining access to the TPM.

In TPM 1.2, the relationship between the internal flag TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS->tpmEstablished and the interface field TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment is inverted logic. Therefore, when one is FALSE the other is TRUE. This is because software accesses the TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS->tpmEstablished field and expects "positive" logic, while hardware reads the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment and expects negative logic. To maintain some minimum level of backwards compatibility, the definition of the interface field TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment maintains the same logic as in a TPM 1.2. TPM 2.0 does not have a flag that corresponds to the TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGs->tpmEstablished nor a command to reset the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment field, so an interface method has been added to this definition of the FIFO interface to provide the same functionality for a TPM 2.0

Software writing to the TPM_ACCESS_x register should set only one field to a 1 for each write. If a write to this register contains more than one field set to 1, the behavior of this register is undefined in this specification and the behavior between TPM implementations may differ.

Software needs to consider that there is no timeout condition defined for the time period between the release of one locality and when access to a subsequent locality is granted (i.e. TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality is set to 1), as this process happens practically immediately from a Software point of view.

Note: The HASH_START/_DATA/_END sequence is independent of the Access register. Software does not need to use the Access Register to send HASH_START/_DATA/_END, because those commands assert Locality 4. As a result, the TPM must always be ready to accept these commands when there is no active locality.

1. The TPM SHALL implement the TPM_ACCESS_x register as documented in Table 18.

2. Any write operation to the TPM_ACCESS_x register with more than one field set to a 1 MAY be treated as vendor specific.

3. For each write, fields containing a 0 SHALL be ignored.

Table 18 — Access Register

Abbreviation:				TPM_ACCESS_x
General Description:				Used to gain ownership of the TPM
Bit Descriptions:				
7	Read Only	tpmRegValidSts	Default: 0	This bit indicates whether all other bits of this register contain valid values, if it is a 1.
6	Read Only	Reserved	Default: 0	SHALL return 0
5	Read/ Write	activeLocality	Default: 0	Read 0 = This locality is not active. Read 1 = This locality is active. Write 1 = Relinquish control of this locality
4	Read/ Write	beenSeized	Default: 0	Read 0 = This locality operates normally or is not active Read 1 = Control of the TPM has been taken from this locality by another higher locality while this locality had its TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality bit set. Write 1 = Clear this bit.
3	Write Only	Seize	Reads always return 0	A write to this field forces the TPM to give control of the TPM to the locality setting this bit if it is the higher priority locality.
2	Read Only	pendingRequest	Default: 0	Read 1 = some other locality is requesting usage of the TPM Read 0 = no other locality is requesting use of the TPM
1	Read/ Write	requestUse	Default: 0	Read 0 = This locality is either not requesting to use the TPM or is already the active locality Read 1 = This locality is requesting to use TPM and is not yet the active locality Write 1 = Request that this locality is granted the active locality
0	Read Only	tpmEstablishment	Default: 1	There are some special end cases (e.g., error conditions) where software needs to know if a Dynamic OS has previously been established on this platform. This bit performs this function. The value of this flag SHALL be preserved across power and reset cycles. Read 0 = A Dynamic OS has been previously established on this platform Read 1 = A Dynamic OS has not been previously established on this platform

Bit Field: tpmRegValidSts

1615 If TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts is set, then all other fields [bits 0:6] of TPM_ACCESS_x are guaranteed to be correct.

If this field remains a 0 for longer than the period specified in Section 5.5.1.4 Timeouts, Software may assume that the TPM is broken and should not use it.

1. For any read of the TPM_ACCESS_x. register, the TPM SHALL insert wait states 1620 (either an LPC Bus Long Wait Sync or SPI wait cycle) until the field TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts contains a valid logical level (i.e., 0 or 1) which represents its true state/value.

2. For all other register fields, which will contain a valid logical level only when TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts = 1, the TPM SHALL not return with 1625 TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts = 1 in response to a read if at least one of the fields contains an invalid logical level.

3. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts SHALL be set to 1 within the Reset Timing requirements specified in Section 6.6 Reset Timing.

Bit Field: Reserved

1630 This field is reserved for future use.

1. Writes to this field SHALL be ignored. A read from this field SHALL return 0.

Bit Field: activeLocality

TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality has 3 functions:

1. It is used as an indicator to the Software to show whether the locality currently 1635 reading the TPM_ACCESS_x register is the active locality

2. It is used by the Software that is currently accessing the TPM at the active locality to relinquish control of the TPM by writing a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality

3. It can be used by the Software that has a currently pending request (to obtain the active   locality) to cancel this pending request by writing a 1 to 1640 TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality.

The time from the request by any inactive locality until the TPM grants the request may vary depending on whether there is another locality to which the TPM has granted access.

After the request of a locality to become the active locality, 1645 TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality will be a 1 within TIMEOUT_A if there is no other locality active at this time, otherwise TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality will be a 1 only after the other locality has relinquished control of the TPM.

Read:

1. If the requesting locality is the active locality, the TPM SHALL return this 1650 TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality = 1.

2. If the requesting locality is not the active locality the TPM SHALL return this TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality = 0.

Write:

1. If a write occurs at the current active locality:

1655   a. On a write of a 1 to the active locality's TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality field the TPM SHALL:

          i. Clear TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality field to 0 for the current locality.

          ii. Relinquish control of the TPM for the current locality.

1660   b. If there are pending requests from other localities, the TPM SHALL transfer control to the locality with the highest priority and set TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality to 1 for the new active locality.

> **Note:** This locality becomes the new active locality.

2. If a write of 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality occurs at a locality which is not the current active locality and the locality performing the write has its 1665 TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse set to 1 (e.g., there is a pending request for this locality which has not been granted), the TPM SHALL cancel the pending request from this locality.

3. If the requesting locality is not the active locality and its TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse is 0, a write to this TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality 1670 SHALL be ignored.

4. TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality SHALL be set to 1 within TIMEOUT_A after TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse has been set to 1 if the TPM is in the "free" state.

5. If there is another locality active at the time when a subsequent locality sets its TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field to 1, this TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality SHALL 1675 be set to 1 within TIMEOUT_A after the other locality has relinquished control of its locality.

For the handling of changing locality during command execution and aborts see Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts

For example if Locality 2 is the current active locality and Locality 0 sets 1680 TPM_ACCESS_0.requestUse = 1, then Locality 0 has a pending request (i.e. TPM_ACCESS_0.requestUse is 1) and all other localities (1 to 4) have TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest set to 1.

If now Locality 3 sets TPM_ACCESS_3.requestUse = 1 now Locality 3 also has a pending request with TPM_ACCESS_0.requestUse and TPM_ACCESS_3.requestUse 1685 being 1 and all other localities (0, 1, 2, 3 and 4) having TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest set to 1.

Now Localities 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 have TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest set to 1 and localities 0 and 3 have their TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse set to 1.

As soon as Locality 2 relinquishes control of the TPM by setting 1690 TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality to a 1, the TPM automatically transfers the control of the TPM to Locality 3 (because of the locality priority rules) and the pending request remains for Locality 0.

Now localities 1 to 4 have their TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest set to 1 and Locality 0 has TPM_ACCESS_0.requestUse set to 1.

1695   If now Locality 0 decides not to maintain the request to use the TPM, it sets TPM_ACCESS_0.activeLocality = 1 and consequently TPM_ACCESS_0.requestUse is cleared to 0 and TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest of the localities 1 to 4 are cleared to 0 as well.

Bit Field: beenSeized

1700   If a locality is the active locality, Software can use this field to determine whether the active locality has been taken away (i.e. seized) by another, higher priority locality and therefore the seized locality needs to abort an entire task and restart it after it has obtained the active locality again. This field can be cleared by the seized locality.

1705   1. TPM_ACCESS_x.beenSeized SHALL be set to a 1 when the active locality gets seized.

        2. A write of a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.beenSeized SHALL clear this field to a 0.

Bit Field: Seize

1710   The seize operation is a mechanism as a "last line of defense", if rogue Software does not relinquish control of a TPM and another, higher locality needs to obtain control of the TPM.

        In this case, the Software of the higher locality (i.e. seizing locality) sets the TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize field to a 1 and then polls on TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality until this field returns a 1 (i.e. successful seize operation). At this point, the Software operating at the lower locality will be informed about the successful seize operation by
1715   TPM_ACCESS_x.beenSeized being set to a 1.

        After the successful seize operation, the Software of the seizing locality reads the TPM_STS_x.commandReady field:

        1. If the TPM_STS_x.commandReady field is a 0, software should write a 1 to the field and then poll until it becomes a 1,

1720   2. If the TPM_STS_x.commandReady field is set and TPM_STS_x.burstCount > 0, software may immediately write the command to the TPM.

        Seize operations from Locality 0 are ignored by the TPM, unless the TPM is in Locality None, since this operation has no real meaning for Locality 0.

        For example, if Locality 0 is the currently active locality and Locality 1 writes a 1 to
1725   TPM_ACCESS_1.Seize, the TPM must clear the TPM_ACCESS_0.activeLocality field of locality 0, i.e. remove control of the TPM from Locality 0 and set TPM_ACCESS_x.beenSeized to 1. Consequently, the TPM must abort any currently executing command and stop accepting commands from Locality 0 as Locality 0 no longer has control of the TPM.

1730   1. If the write to TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize occurs from a locality of higher priority than the current locality:

        a. The TPM SHALL clear the TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality fields for any active locality of lower priority than the locality seizing the TPM.

        b. The TPM SHALL NOT change the state of the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field
1735   for any locality except the one writing this field.

      c. The TPM SHALL set TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality to a 1, clear the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field to a 0 for the locality writing this field, and, if there are no other active requests, clear the TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest field to 0 for all other localities.

1740   d. The TPM SHALL abort any command that is currently in process, as defined in Section 5.5.2.3.1 <u>Command Aborts</u>.

2. If the write occurs from a locality that is equal to or lower than the current locality the TPM SHALL ignore the write.

3. A read to TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize SHALL return 0.

1745 ***Bit Field: pendingRequest***

This field indicates whether a locality other than the currently active locality has requested to become the active locality. Software can use this field to determine if it should relinquish control of the TPM so that the other locality can use it.

1. When a locality writes a 1 to its TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse, the TPM SHALL set
1750   TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest to a 1 for all other localities.

2. If there are no pending requests, when the locality that has written a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse has obtained the control of the TPM as signified by TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality, TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest for all other localities SHALL be cleared to 0.

1755 3. When the locality with a pending request writes a 1 to its TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality field (i.e. cancels the pending request):

      a. If there are no other pending requests, the TPM SHALL clear all TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest field to 0.

      b. If there is one other pending request, the TPM SHALL clear the
1760   TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest field to 0 for the locality with the active request.

      c. If there are multiple pending requests, the TPM SHALL NOT clear any TPM_ACCESS_x.pendingRequest field to 0.

4. The TPM SHALL ignore writes to this field.

1765 ***Bit Field: requestUse***

This field is used to request access to the TPM as the active locality. Software can write a 1 to this field when it needs to get control of the TPM. After the request is issued, Software must wait until its request to become the active locality is granted.

This field may only be cleared by writing a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality for the
1770 requesting locality.

Note: Writing a zero to TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse does not clear the pending request for this locality. See bit field: activeLocality for more information.

1. When a locality writes a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse, the TPM SHALL set this field to 1 for the requesting locality.

1775 **Note:** If the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse is already set to 1, the TPM SHALL ignore writes of 1 to this field.

2. When the locality that has set its TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse has been granted control of the TPM as signified by TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality set to 1, the TPM SHALL clear the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field to 0 for the requesting locality.

1780 3. When a locality cancels a pending request, signified by writing a 1 to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality, the TPM SHALL clear this field to 0 for the requesting locality.

4. The TPM SHALL ignore writes of 0 to TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse.

Bit Field: tpmEstablishment

1785 TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment is a register field which indicates whether a Dynamic OS has been launched. The reason this register field uses inverted logic is to allow systems without TPMs to indicate, using this register, that no Dynamical OS has been launched. Since the default state of the register field is 1, Reading from a device that doesn't exist (there is no device to claim the read request) returns a value of all 1790 ones, therefore a read access to the TPM's access register when there is no TPM present returns as if no Dynamic OS has been established.

1. If the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts is set to 1, any read of the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment field SHALL reflect the correct value.

2. If TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts is cleared to 0 (i.e., TPM_ACCESS register is not 1795 valid):

   a. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment MAY be a 0.

   b. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL NOT be a 1 unless that is the correct value of the field.

3. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL be 0 prior to initialization and update of 1800 the DRTM PCR at the completion of HASH_END.

   a. If TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment is 0:

      i. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL remain 0 until the TPM receives a write of 1 to TPM_STS_x.resetEstablishmentBit

      ii. The value of TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL NOT change across 1805 power or reset cycles.

4. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL be 1 if no DRTM HASH_END has been executed.

5. If TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment is 1, receipt of a DRTM HASH_END command SHALL clear it to 0 within TIMEOUT_A.

1810 6. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablishment SHALL be duplicated across Localities 0-4.

5.5.2.5 Status Register

The TPM_STS_x.commandReady field is functionally overloaded. If there is no command being executed, a write to this field is an indicator to the TPM that it must prepare to receive a command. If there is a command being executed, a write to this field serves as an abort of that command. If a command has completed and the results have been read, a write to this field allows the TPM to free internal resources (including the Read and Write FIFOs) and proceed with background or other processes allowed during idle time. A TPM may be designed in a manner that allows the first write to this field to clear and free the TPM's resources and make it ready to receive a command.

Software must be prepared to send two writes of a 1 to this field: the first to indicate successful read of all the data, thus clearing the data from the ReadFIFO and freeing the TPM's resources, and the second to indicate to the TPM it is about to send a new command. The time between receiving the data from a command and sending the first write to this field should be very short to allow TPMs that perform background processing to proceed. The time between the first write and the second indicates the beginning of a new command is arbitrary.

Software may be written such that the second write to this field is only necessary if the TPM does not respond with a ready after the first write. In this case, the software, after writing a 1 to this field indicating the receipt of the data, may query this field. If the TPM sets this field to a 1 indicating its readiness to receive a command, the software may proceed to send the command without writing a 1 to this field.

5.5.2.5.1 TPM Status Register States

For each write to this register, there SHALL be only one field set to a 1. If the TPM receives a write with more than one field set, the TPM SHALL ignore the entire cycle. For each write, fields containing 0 are ignored.

The TPM is considered to be in one of the following defined states:

1. *Command Reception* occurs between the write of the first byte of a command to the WriteFIFO following a ready state and the receipt of a write of 1 to TPM_STS_x.tpmGo.

2. *Command Execution* occurs after receipt of a 1 to TPM_STS_x.tpmGo and the TPM setting TPM_STS_x.commandReady:dataAvail to a 1, unless the command is aborted as defined in Section 5.5.2.3.1 Command Aborts.

3. *Command Completion* occurs after completion of a command (indicated by the TPM setting the TPM_STS_x.commandReady:dataAvail to a 1 and before a write of a 1 by the software to TPM_STS_x.commandReady).

4. *Idle* is any time after Command Completion followed by the write of a 1 by the software to TPM_STS_x.commandReady, following locality change, or a command abort. Idle is the initial state of TPM upon completion of _TPM_INIT.

5. *Ready* is any time the TPM is ready to receive a command, as indicated by TPM_STS_x.commandReady being set.

The following informative diagram is derived from the above normative statements. It is informative and only for illustrating diagrammatically the above TPM states and their transitions. The numbers in parentheses reference the states represented by row numbers in Table 22 — State Transition Table

1855

TPM_Init

Recover from Abort

Must do so < TIMEOUT_B

(0A) Remain Idle

(3) Write 1 to commandReady

(7) Write 1 to commandReady

Idle

Ready

(0B) TPM may go directly to Ready only if time since entering Idle < TIMEOUT_B

(37) Write 1 to commandReady

(9) Write 1st byte to write FIFO

Command Completion

Command Reception

(22) Command Completes

(18) Write 1 to tpmGo

Command Execution
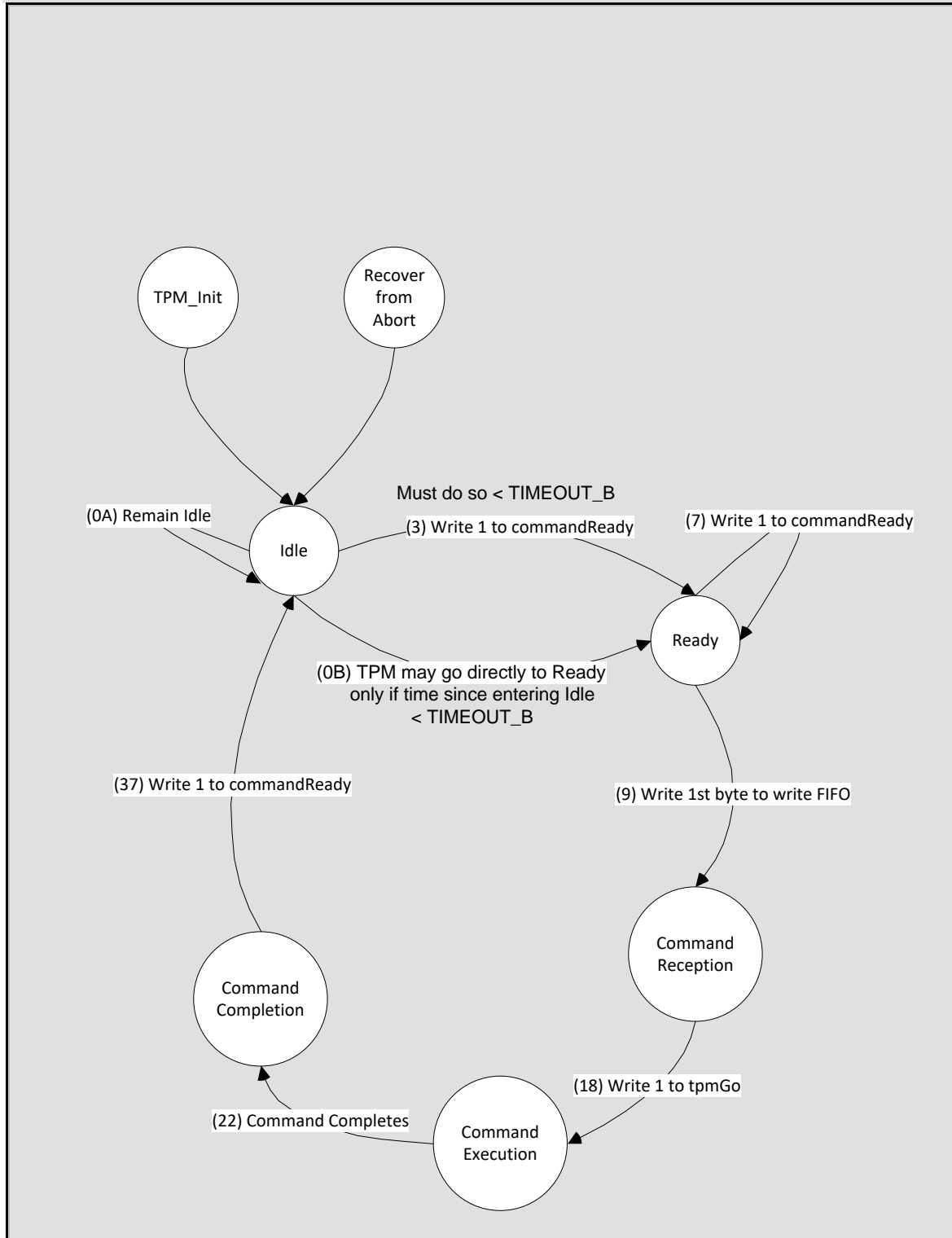
Figure 3 — State Transition Diagram

5.5.2.5.2 Bus Access of the Status Register

1. For any read from the TPM_STS_x. register, the TPM SHALL assert zero or more
   wait states (either an LPC Bus Long Wait Sync or SPI wait cycles) until all fields in
   the register, except TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect, contain a valid
   logical level (i.e., 0 or 1) which represents their true state/value.

2. For the register fields TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect, which will
   contain a valid logical level only when TPM_STS_x.stsValid=1, the TPM SHALL not
   return with TPM_STS_x.stsValid=1 in response to a read if either
   TPM_STS_x.dataAvail (while reading results) or TPM_STS_x.Expect (while sending a
   command) contains an invalid logical level, respectively.

3. The TPM SHALL implement the Status Register as documented in Section 5.5.2.5
   Status Register.

Table 19 — Status Register

Abbreviation:				TPM_STS_x
General Description:				Contains general status details
Bit Descriptions:				
31:28	Read Only	reserved	Reads always return 0	
27:26	Read Only	tpmFamily		TPM Family Identifier 00: TPM 1.2 Family 01: TPM 2.0 Family 10: Reserved future use 11: Reserved for future use
25	Write Only	resetEstablishmentBit	Reads always return 0 Write of 1 resets the Established Flag	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Reset TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablished bit if the write occurs from Locality 3 or 4. Valid indicator: NA
24	Write Only	commandCancel	Write Only	Reads always return 0 A write of a 1 to this field after tpmGo and before dataAvail aborts the currently executing command, resulting in a response of TPM_RC_CANCELLED. A write of 1 to this field after dataAvail and before tpmGo is ignored by the TPM. Writes of 0 may be ignored. Valid indicator: NA
23:8	Read Only	burstCount	Default = number of consecutive writes that can be done to the TPM	Indicates the number of bytes that the TPM can return on reads or accept on writes without inserting wait states on the bus. Valid indicator: NA
7	Read Only	stsValid	Default: 0	This field indicates that TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect are valid. Read of 1 indicates that TPM_STS_x.davaAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect contain a valid value. Valid indicator: N/A
6	Read/ Write	commandReady	Default: 0	Read of 1 indicates TPM is ready, Write of 1 causes TPM to transition its state. Valid indicator: N/A
5	Write Only	tpmGo	Reads always return 0	After software has written a command to the TPM and sees that it was received correctly, software SHALL write a 1 to this field to cause the TPM to execute that command. Valid indicator: N/A
4	Read Only	dataAvail	Default: 0	This field indicates that the TPM has data available as a response. When set to 1, software MAY read the ReadFIFO. The TPM SHALL clear the field to 0 when it has returned all the data for the response. Valid indicator: TPM_STS_x.stsValid = 1
3	Read Only	Expect	Default: 0	The TPM sets this field to a value of 1 when it expects another byte of data for a command. It clears this field to a value of 0 when it has received all the data it expects for that command,

Abbreviation:				TPM_STS_x	
General Description:				Contains general status details	
Bit Descriptions:					
				based on the TPM size field within the packet. Valid indicator: TPM_STS_x.stsValid = 1	
2	Read Only	selfTestDone	Default: 0	This field indicates that the TPM has completed all self-test actions following a TPM_ContinueSelfTest command. Read of 0 indicates self-test is not complete. Read of 1 indicates self-test is complete.	
1	Write Only	responseRetry	Reads always return 0	Software writes a 1 to this field to force the TPM to re-send the response. Reads SHALL return 0 Valid indicator: N/A	
0	Read Only	Reserved (0)	Reads always return 0		

Bit Field: resetEstablishmentBit

This field is used to replace functionality provided by the TSC_ResetEstablishmentBit command in TPM 1.2. This command is not present in TPM 2.0, but this interface mechanism provides equivalent functionality.

1875 This field is used to reset the state of the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablished field, once that bit has been set to 0 by a D-RTM sequence. A write to this field will be processed by the TPM as if a command has been received. Once this field is written, the TPM will clear commandReady until the TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablished flag has been cleared.

This field can only be written from Localities 3 and 4.

1880 The TPM will treat a write to this bit as if the TPM has received a Command, and will set TPM_STS_x.dataAvail to 1 once the actions of the operation have been completed. As the TPM may or may not place data in the FIFO, software should ignore this data. It will be overwritten in the next command cycle.

1. Reads to TPM_STS_x.resetEstablishmentBit SHALL always return 0.

1885 2. For Localities 0-2, writes are ignored.

3. For Localities 3 and 4

    a. Writes of 0 are ignored

    b. When in the Ready or Idle state, writes of 1 set TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmEstablished bit to a 1 and clear TPM_STS_x.resetEstablishmentBit bit to 0 within
1890   TIMEOUT_A.

Bit Field: commandCancel

Cancel may be used by software to request the TPM to terminate processing the current command. Software might request this because the system is going to a lower power state. The TPM will either complete the currently processing command and return the result, or will cancel the command and return the return code TPM_RC_Canceled. In general, for long running commands, the TPM may have checkpoints in its code to check the state of the Cancel field. If, at one of these checkpoints, the TPM sees a Command Cancel request, the TPM has the option of canceling the command or completing the command. TPM's are not required to perform this check. TPM's that can finish all commands within the required timeouts may return the command response instead of cancelling the command.

Cancel is an asynchronous input. Driver writers should take care in use of this function in their drivers, as the TPM could enter a state where it would process no commands. This case may occur if SW sends a Cancel, but fails to clear it. A TPM may be implemented such that it will continue to cancel commands or will complete the command and transition to Command Completion with a result. Alternatively, TPM's may be implemented so that they only cancel a single command. Driver writers should take care to send command Cancel requests only when the TPM is in Command Execution state and to only clear the field when the TPM has exited Command Execution to avoid unexpected behavior.

1. When the TPM is in the Command Execution state and TPM_STS_x.commandCancel is set to 1:

   a. The TPM MAY terminate command processing,

   b. The TPM SHALL return a response and transition to the Command Completion state:

      i. If the command is successfully completed, the TPM SHALL return the command response.

      ii. If the command is terminated, the TPM SHALL return TPM_RC_CANCELED.

      iii. The TPM SHALL complete the command or cancel it within TIMEOUT_B.

2. When the TPM is in any state other than Command Execution, the TPM SHOULD ignore TPM_STS_x.commandCancel.

3. The TPM MAY ignore writes of 0.

Bit Field: BurstCount:

It's helpful to understand burstCount by first explaining it in the context of an example implementation. For example, a TPM's firmware processes commands once they are received by the TPM. Software however, does not directly interact with the TPM's firmware. Rather, it sends and receives data via hardware registers called a data FIFO. During a command send phase, software writes command data directly to the data FIFO which the firmware reads from the FIFO. There is no relationship between the size or amount of data sent to the data FIFO (from either side) and the size of the command or the command's response. The data FIFO, therefore, can be thought of as a hardware buffer between the software and the TPM's firmware. The value in the burstCount field is simply the number of bytes that can be written or read from the data FIFO (i.e., the hardware buffer) at any one time. It will likely require multiple writes (for command send) or multiple reads (for response reads) to and from the data FIFO in order to send a command and read a response.

It is expected that the data FIFO is sufficiently fast so that, provided there is room (during command send) and bytes available (during a read response) in the data FIFO, all writes and reads will occur without any wait states. Therefore, burstCount is defined as the number of bytes that can be written to or read from the data FIFO by the software without incurring a wait state.

Software should read this field and write or read the number of bytes indicated. Once that number of bytes has been written to the TPM, the TPM may set burstCount = 0. Software must wait while burstCount = 0, by polling on burstCount, until the TPM sets burstCount > 0. Once burstCount > 0 software resumes writing or reading data up to the new burstCount value.

Again, there is no relationship between the size of the data FIFO and the value in the burstCount field, versus the size of the command or response data. On a command send, software must not pad to the data FIFO nor must it read more response data than indicated by the command's response size value. For example, if after sending several data FIFO's worth of command data to the TPM, there are seven bytes left to send, even if burstCount = 16, software must still only send seven bytes. Conversely, on response read if there are only three bytes left of the response to read, software must only read three bytes from the data FIFO even if burstCount = 16.

This field may be dynamic or static as indicated by TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.burstCountStatic.

A dynamic burstCount field reports a changing number of bytes that can be read or written. For example, on command send, as data is written to the data FIFO the burstCount field is decremented by the number of bytes written indicating there are fewer bytes available to write into the data FIFO. As the firmware reads the data out of the data FIFO the burstCount field is incremented indicating there are more bytes available in the FIFO. Conversely, on response read, as software reads data from the data FIFO the burstCount field decrements indicating there are fewer bytes in the data FIFO available to read without incurring a wait state. As firmware writes response data to the data FIFO the burstCount field increments indicating there are more bytes available to read without incurring a wait state.

A static burstCount field reports a fixed number of bytes that can be read or written. Software reads burstCount and must keep track of that value. Once software begins to write, for command send, or read, for response read, the TPM sets burstCount = 0 until the fixed value is written or read. Only after the fixed number of bytes have been written or read will the burstCount field contain a nonzero value for software to read. Note that in this case, burstCount is a fixed value from _TPM_INIT, allowing software to read burstCount once when the software is first initialized and to save the value, and to use the saved value until the next _TPM_INIT. In this case after the initial read of burstCount, software only needs to look at whether burstCount is a zero or non-zero value.

Note: It takes roughly 330 ns per byte transfer on LPC. 256 bytes would take 84 us. Chipsets may not be designed to post this much data to LPC; therefore, the CPU itself is stalled for much of this time. Sending 1 kB would take 350 us. Therefore, even if the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field is a high value, software should be interruptible during this period. For SPI, assuming 20MHz clock and 64-byte transfers, it would take about 120 usec to move 256B of data. Sending 1kB would take about 500 usec. If the transactions are done using 4 bytes at a time, then it would take about 1 msec. to transfer 1kB of data.

1. For dynamic burstCount (I.e., TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.burstCountStatic == 0):

   a. For command send phase

      i. If the data FIFO is not ready to receive data from the software without incurring an LPC wait state, the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0.

         Note: this rule applies not just to the beginning of the command send phase but at any time during the command send phase. E.g., after several writes to the data FIFO have occurred the software may fill the data FIFO completely because the firmware cannot read and process the data as fast as software can write it.

      ii. When the TPM is ready to receive data in the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL set burstCount equal to the number of bytes software can write without incurring an LPC wait state.

         (1) As data is received from software into the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL decrement burstCount.

         (2) As the TPM (e.g., firmware) reads data from the data FIFO the TPM SHALL increment burstCount.

   b. For response read phase

      i. If the data FIFO is not ready to return data to the software without incurring an LPC wait state, the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0.

         Note: this rule applies not just to the beginning of the response read phase but at any time during the response read phase. E.g., after several reads from the data FIFO have occurred the software may read all the data in the data FIFO (i.e., empty the data FIFO) because the firmware cannot place response data in the FIFO as fast as software can read it.

      ii. When the TPM is ready for software to read data from the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL set burstCount equal to the number of bytes software can read without incurring an LPC wait state.

(1) As software reads data from the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL decrement burstCount.

(2) As the TPM (e.g., firmware) writes data to the data FIFO the TPM SHALL increment burstCount.

2. For static burstCount (I.e., TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x.burstCountStatic == 1):

   a. For command send phase

      i. If the data FIFO is not ready to receive data from the software without incurring an LPC wait state, the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0.

      ii. When the data FIFO is ready to receive data from the software without incurring an LPC wait state, the TPM SHALL set burstCount equal to the maximum number of bytes that can be transferred by software to the TPM without incurring LPC wait sync.

      iii. Upon receipt of the first command data byte the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0. The burstCount field SHALL remain set = 0 until the indicated number of bytes have been sent by software to the data FIFO.

      iv. Once the TPM has received the indicated number of bytes in the data FIFO, the TPM must set burstCount equal to the first value that was sent to the software.

      Note: for static burstCount, burstCount is a fixed value and SHALL NOT change after _TPM_INIT until the next _TPM_INIT.

   b. For response read phase

      i. If the data FIFO is not ready to return data to the software without incurring an LPC wait state, the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0.

      ii. When the data FIFO is ready for software to read data without incurring an LPC wait sync the TPM SHALL set burstCount equal to the maximum number of bytes that can be read by software without incurring LPC wait sync.

      iii. Upon software's read of the first response data byte, the TPM SHALL set burstCount = 0. The burstCount field SHALL remain = 0 until software has read the indicated number of bytes from the data FIFO.

      iv. Once the software has read the indicated number of bytes from the data FIFO, the TPM SHALL set burstCount equal to the first value that was sent to the software.

      Note: for static burstCount, burstCount is a fixed value and SHALL NOT change after _TPM_INIT until the next _TPM_INIT.

3. Following a write to TPM_STS_x.responseRetry or a command abort operation, any value previously read from the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field is invalid until TPM_STS_x.DataAvail = 1.

4. Timeout:

   a. For command send: After TPM_STS_x.commandReady is set to 1, TPM_STS_x.burstCount SHALL be non-zero within the time specified by TIMEOUT_A.

b. For response read: After TPM_STS_x.DataAvail == 1, TPM_STS_x.burstCount
SHALL be non-zero within the time specified by TIMEOUT_A.

5. The TPM SHALL be designed to report the correct count even though there is a time delay in returning the 2 bytes on the LPC bus.

There are many ways to ensure the correct count is always reported. A few examples are below:

Return 0x00 for the upper byte in all cases. This limits the field to 255 bytes, but that is a sufficiently large number that polling on this register every 255 bytes is insignificant in terms of performance.

Guarantee that the count does not change between the read of the first byte and the read of the second byte. This could be done if the hardware updates the count field at the time of the previous read or write and does not change it until the next read or write. Alternatively, it could be done if hardware latches both bytes of the count that is returned on the read of the first byte, and returns the latched second byte on the next read. In this case, if there is a read or write of the data before the next read of the TPM_STS_x.burstCount, then the latch is reset.

Use static burstCount.

Note that there could be the case where internally the TPM is processing the FIFO and TPM_STS_x.burstCount is dynamic, whereby the count is changing even though there are no LPC bus transactions. In this case, the read of the low byte might not be synchronized with the high byte – hardware must not allow this condition.

Bit Field: stsValid

TPM_STS_x.stsValid gates reads to the fields TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect. If TPM_STS_x.stsValid is not set, then TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.Expect are not guaranteed to be correct. If the TPM does not support the stsValid Interrupt, software that is using TPM_STS_x.dataAvail or TPM_STS_x.Expect must poll on TPM_STS_x register until TPM_STS_x.stsValid is set. Software should not use the contents of the status register if this field is 0.

1. The TPM SHALL set the TPM_STS_x.stsValid field within TIMEOUT_A after the last data cycle to this register is received.

2. The TPM SHALL not set the TPM_STS_x.stsValid field to 1 unless either the TPM_STS_x.Expect field is valid in the command Completion state or TPM_STS_x.dataAvail field is valid in the command Reception state

Bit Field: commandReady

TPM_STS_x.commandReady is a dual-function field. It is used by the TPM to indicate readiness to receive a command. Software uses this field to initiate a command sequence with the TPM.

Note on software usage of this field:

Software should be designed such that it checks this field before sending any new data to the TPM data FIFO. This allows software to know the TPM's state. Software should never send data to the TPM when this field is set to 0, indicating the TPM is not ready. After software has successfully received data from the TPM, it should write a 1 to this field to signal to the TPM that the response was correctly received.

Read:

1. The TPM is in the *Ready* state when this field is set to 1.

   a. The TPM SHALL not enter the *Ready* state unless both the ReadFIFO and
2100   WriteFIFO are empty.

   b. The TPM SHALL clear this field to 0 when the first byte of data is received into
      the WriteFIFO.

2. The TPM is not in a *Ready* state when this field is set to 0.

Write:

2105 1. A write of 0 to this field SHALL be ignored.

2. Upon a write of a 1 to this field.

   a. When in the Ready state, the TPM SHALL ignore this write and remain in the
      Ready state.

   b. When in the Idle state, the TPM SHALL enter the *Ready* state within the time
2110   TIMEOUT_B.

   c. When in the Command *Reception* state, the TPM SHALL treat this as an abort
      according to Section 5.5.2.3 <u>Command Aborts</u>.

   d. When in the Command *Completion* state:

      i.   The TPM SHALL clear the ReadFIFO and the WriteFIFO.

2115   ii. The TPM SHALL enter either the *Idle* state or the *Ready* state.

      iii. If the TPM does not enter the *Ready* state within time TIMEOUT_B, it SHALL
           enter the *Idle* state.

   e. When in the Command *Execution* state, the TPM SHALL cause the currently
      executing command to be aborted according to Section 5.5.2.3 <u>Command</u>
2120   <u>Aborts</u>.

Bit Field: tpmGo

This field is used by Software to tell the TPM to execute the received command.
Execution of the command may take from several seconds to minutes for certain
commands, such as key generation. Software should confirm the TPM has received
2125 the complete command by reading the TPM_STS_x.stsValid and TPM_STS_x.Expect
fields. This field is write-only.

1. The TPM SHALL execute the received command on a write of 1 to this field.

2. The TPM SHALL ignore a write of 0 to this field and SHALL NOT return an error.

3. The TPM SHALL return 0 on a read request.

2130 ### *Bit Field: dataAvail*

The TPM sets this field when it is ready to return the response. The validity of this field
is determined by TPM_STS_x.stsValid, as defined in normative text for the ***Bit Field:***
stsValid.

2135 To detect overruns/under runs, software SHOULD read TPM_STS_x.dataAvail before it reads what it thinks is the last byte of the response. If TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is 1, then there is at least 1 more byte to read. Software reads the last byte and re-reads TPM_STS_x.dataAvail. In this case, TPM_STS_x.dataAvail should be 0; since, if things are working correctly, there is no more data to return. If TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is still 1, then the TPM has more data to return, and software is out of sync with the
2140 hardware; therefore, software should set TPM_STS_x.responseRetry to force the TPM to resend the response.

If a read of TPM_STS_x.dataAvail returns a 0 before software reads the last byte, the TPM thinks it has no more data to return, while software still expects 1 more byte. In this case, software SHALL set TPM_STS_x.responseRetry to force the TPM to resend
2145 the response.

If the DataAvailInt interrupt is not supported, software must poll on the TPM_STS_x register until TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is set.

1. The TPM SHALL not set this field to a 1 unless it has completed command execution and data is ready to be read.

2150 a. The TPM SHALL set this field when data is present in the ReadFIFO.

   b. The TPM SHALL set this field when software writes to TPM_STS_x.responseRetry.

   c. The TPM SHALL make data available in the ReadFIFO when this field is set.

   d. The TPM SHALL set the DataAvailInt interrupt, if the interrupt is supported,
2155   after setting this field.

2. The TPM SHALL set this field to zero if it is either not ready to transmit data or has returned the last byte of data.

   a. The TPM SHALL clear this field to 0 when the ReadFIFO is empty because either the TPM has sent all the data or is not ready to send data

2160 b. The TPM SHALL clear this field to 0 when software sets TPM_STS_x.commandReady = 1 even though the response data has not been read.

3. This field SHALL be valid if TPM_STS_x.stsValid is set.

Bit Field: Expect

2165 This field is set by the TPM when it expects to receive data from software. The validity of this field is determined by TPM_STS_x.stsValid.

The TPM will set this field once it starts receiving data. The field will stay set until the TPM receives at least 10 bytes, as this is the smallest valid command length. The TPM will use the first 10 bytes to determine the actual length of the command. If the length
2170 is longer than 10 bytes, this field will stay set until the TPM receives the full command.

1. Software should examine the Expect field before and after sending the last byte to ensure the TPM has received the full command. If the Expect field is set to 1 before software sends the last byte of the command, there is no error condition. Software
2175 should send the last byte and check Expect again. If the Expect field is set to a 0, the command has been successfully received. If the value of the Expect field is 0

prior to software sending the last byte or is 1 after software sends the last byte, an error has occurred and software should restart the command.

2180
2. The TPM SHALL set this field to 1 when in the command Reception state and MAY set this field to 1 when in the Ready state.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT set this field to 1 in any other state.

4. The TPM SHALL clear this field to 0 when in any other state.

5. This field SHALL be valid if TPM_STS_x.stsValid is set.

Bit Field: *selfTestDone*

2185
This field is set by the TPM to indicate the status of the TPM's self-test following receipt of a TPM_SelfTest command. The field will be at 0 as long as the TPM has capabilities remaining to be tested. Once the TPM completes its self-test, it sets this bit to a 1. This field is always valid.

1. The TPM SHALL set this field to 1 when all of the actions required to complete the
2190   command TPM_SelfTest are done.

2. The TPM SHALL NOT set this field to 1 unless it has completed all of the actions required by TPM_SelfTest.

3. The TPM SHALL ignore writes to this field and SHALL NOT return an error.

Bit Field: *responseRetry*

2195
This field is set by Software to force the TPM to resend a response without sending a command. This may occur if a TPM exceeds the timeout defined for the response. Software should implement a retry counter and set this field if the retry counter is less than its threshold. This field is write-only.

1. The TPM SHALL resend the last response on a write of 1 to this field.

2200
2. The TPM SHALL ignore writes of 0 to this field and SHALL NOT return an error.

3. The TPM SHALL return 0 on a read request

5.5.2.6   Data FIFO Register

This register is the port used by the TPM to return data and status to software. Return packets for commands are multiple bytes but are read by software in 1-byte
2205   increments. Software should read the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field to determine how many consecutive bytes it can read. Software should read the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field for better general system performance.

As the HASH_START/_DATA/_END interface commands are independent of the TPM_ACCESS_x register, processes calling these commands should not poll
2210   TPM_STS_x.burstCount and should send data to the TPM using only the interface protocols and bus speeds.

Table 20 — Data FIFO Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_DATA_FIFO_x
General Description:			Data port for TPM
Bit Descriptions:			
7:0	Read/Write	Default: undefined	Reads to this register return Command Response data. Writes to this register contain Command Send Data

1. When TPM_STS_x.stsValid is set to 1 and TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is cleared to 0, the TPM SHOULD return FFh to any read request to the Data FIFO register.

2215   2. The TPM SHALL NOT drop a write on the bus when it is not able to accept it. Instead, it SHALL insert one or more wait states, according to the interface protocol (e.g. wait-sync the LPC bus or an SPI wait cycle according to Section 6.4.5 <u>Flow Control</u>).

5.5.2.7   Interface Capability

2220   This register is only valid for a FIFO interface. Bits 9 and 10 allow the TPM to communicate the maximum data transfer size it supports. The TPM may support larger transactions on LPC.

1. This register SHALL be valid if TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType or TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType is set to 0000 or 1111. For all other values of 2225   TPM_INTERFACE_ID_x.InterfaceType or TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.InterfaceType, this register is invalid.

2. The DataTransferSizeSupport field indicates the maximum transfer size supported by the TPM.

3. If the TPM supports only legacy transfer sizes, the DataTransferSizeSupport field 2230   SHALL be set to '00'.

    a. Reads and Writes SHALL only be accepted at the offset for the DATA_FIFO.

    b. TPM SHALL perform a bus abort on transactions to the XDATA_FIFO.

4. If the TPM supports any DataTransferSizeSupport value other than '00':

    a. The TPM SHALL support the XDATA_FIFO in addition to the DATA_FIFO.

2235   b. The TPM SHALL accept any data transfer size up to and including the size indicated by DataTransferSizeSupport.

    Note: This includes data transfers from 1-4 bytes, which may be written to either the DATA_FIFO or the XDATA_FIFO.

Table 21 — Interface Capability

Abbreviation:			TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x	
General Description:			Provides information of which interrupts that particular TPM supports. The TPM SHALL implement this register.	
Bit Descriptions:				
31	Read Only	Reserved	Default: Vendor Defined	The value of this field is not specified.
30:28	Read Only	InterfaceVersion	Default: Defined by hardware	000: Interface 1.21 or earlier 001: Reserved 010: Interface 1.3 011: Interface 1.3 for TPM 2.0 as defined in this specification. 100-111: Reserved
27:11	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0	
10:9	Read Only	DataTransferSizeSupport	Default: 00 but Defined by hardware	Indicates what transaction size the TPM supports for Data transfers 11 = TPM supports 64-byte maximum transfer size (note, support for 64-byte transfer size also indicates support for legacy, 8- and 32-byte transfers) 10 = TPM supports 32-byte maximum transfer size (includes support for legacy and 8-byte transfers) 01 = TPM supports 8-byte maximum transfer size (includes support for legacy) 00 = TPM supports legacy transfer size only
8	Read only	BurstCountStatic	Default: Defined by hardware	Indicates whether the TPM_STS_x.burstCount field is dynamic or static 1 = TPM_STS_x.burstCount is static 0 = TPM_STS_x.burstCount is dynamic
7	Read only	CommandReadyIntSupport	Default: Defined by hardware	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.commandReadyEnable 1 = supported 0 = not supported
6	Read Only	InterruptEdgeFalling	Default: Defined by hardware	Falling edge interrupt support 1 = supported 0 = not supported
5	Read Only	InterruptEdgeRising	Default: Defined by hardware	Rising edge interrupt support 1 = supported 0 = not supported
4	Read Only	InterruptLevelLow	Mandatory: SHALL be 1	Low level interrupt support. This interrupt trigger is mandatory. 1 = supported 0 = not allowed
3	Read Only	InterruptLevelHigh	Default: Defined by hardware	High level interrupt support 1 = supported 0 = not supported

2	Read Only	LocalityChangeIntSupport	Mandatory: SHALL be 1	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.localityChangeIntEnable. This is a mandatory interrupt. 1 = supported 0 = not allowed
1	Read Only	stsValidIntSupport	Default: Defined by hardware	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.stsValidIntEnable 1 = supported 0 = not supported
0	Read Only	dataAvailIntSupport	Mandatory: SHALL be 1	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.dataAvailIntEnable. This is a mandatory interrupt. 1 = supported 0 = not allowed

2240

5.5.2.8   Status Field State Transitions

Table 22 — State Transition Table shows the changes in status fields based on the command or action done to the TPM. Notice this is not a state transition table covering the states defined in Section 5.5.2.5.1 TPM Status Register States rather a table
2245 describing how the status fields change based on initial condition and action taken. The following rules apply to Table 22 — State Transition Table.

1. There MAY be intermediate status field states, where a command has finished, but TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is not yet set. Software is expected to poll until the appropriate status field is set.

2250 2. The fields in the table represent values only when TPM_STS_x.stsValid = 1. Transitional states when TPM_STS_x.stsValid = 0 are neither captured nor represented in this table.

3. This table applies only to status field states where a locality has already been selected and no change in locality is performed.

2255 4. The statements in the column labeled "Action Taken" are *informative* when shaded and are derived from normative statements contained within the definitions of the TPM_STS_x register in Section 5.5.2.5 Status Register, the description of the FIFO handling in Section 2 Handling Command FIFOs, the description of the command transmission in Section 5.5.2.2.1 Command Send and the description of
2260 the response reception in Section 5.5.2.2.2 Data Availability. If there is an inconsistency between this column and the statements within normative definitions of the TPM_STS.x registers, the normative statements within definitions of the TPM_STS.x registers take precedence. The statements made in unshaded text and delimited by the phrases: "Start of normative comment" and "End of
2265 normative comment" are normative. Note, this is a reversal of the standard notation.

5. Normal transitions are highlighted in yellow and are indexed to the state transitions illustrated in Figure 3.

6. In all cases in Table 22 — State Transition Table where Idle is the next state, the
2270 TPM is allowed to transition directly to Ready effectively via transition 0.B. This simplifies the table by not having to show two ending states possibilities. When

making a transparent transition to the Ready state, the TPM is not required to indicate it is or has been in the Idle state to the software, therefore, making this transition transparent to the software.

2275   7.   The following abbreviations are used in Table 22 — State Transition Table:

Label	Bit Definition
C/R	TPM_STS_x.commandReady
D/A	TPM_STS_x.dataAvail
E	TPM_STS_x.Expect
TG	TPM_STS_x.tpmGo
R/R	TPM_STS_x.responseRetry
N/C	No Change to this field from previous state
—	No TPM access for the corresponding data element
X	Either 0 or 1. The TPM is allowed to maintain this field as either value for this state. Software SHALL be capable of managing the TPM if either case is implemented.

Table 22 — State Transition Table

#	Present State of TPM_STS_x				Fields / Data Written to TPM_STS_x or TPM_DATA_FIFO.x					Next State & Result / Reason				Action Taken
	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	C/R	TG	R/R	Write Data	Read Data	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	*Informative*
0.A	Idle	0	0	0	—	—	—	—	—	Idle	0	0	0	*Start of normative comment* I_T = Time since entering the Idle state If TPM is Idle and I_T >= TIMEOUT_B Then: TPM SHALL remain in the Idle state (i.e., continue executing in this in this row/state) until commanded to change by the software (i.e., via state transition in row 3). Else: (i.e., I_T < TIMEOUT_B) TPM MAY transition to the Ready state (i.e., transition to row 0B) *End of normative comment*
0.B	Idle	0	0	0	—	—	—	—	—	Ready	1	0	X	This specification allows a TPM to be implemented such that the software never sees the Idle state. This transition codifies and enables that behavior. *Start of normative comment* I_T = Time since entering the Idle state If TPM is Idle and I_T >= TIMEOUT_B Then: TPM SHALL NOT enter the Ready state (i.e., it SHALL NOT execute the state transition in this row and SHALL remain Idle in Row 0A). Else: (i.e., I_T < TIMEOUT_B) TPM MAY transition to the Ready state (i.e., execute the transition in this row). If the TPM performs this transition, it is not required to indicate that it is, or has been, in the Idle state; rather it is allowed to appear as if it went directly from the state prior to the Idle state to the Ready state transparently to the software. *End of normative comment*
1	Idle	0	0	0	0	0	1			Idle	0	0	0	There is no response to retry. No state change.
2	Idle	0	0	0	0	1	0			Idle	0	0	0	There is no command to execute. No state change.
3	Idle	0	0	0	1	0	0			Ready	1	0	X	This is the typical state change resulting from the software's request to send a command.
4	Idle	0	0	0				Write data		Idle	0	0	0	TPM drops write, since it is not expecting data. If the software was sending a command and still has data to write, then this is an error in transmission and the software must re-transmit the command.
5	Idle	0	0	0					Read data	Idle	0	0	0	TPM returns FFh, since TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is not set.
6	Ready	1	0	X	0	0	1			Ready	1	0	X	No effect on TPM, since TPM_STS_x.commandReady indicates that the response has been read successfully.
7	Ready	1	0	X	0	1	0			Ready	1	0	X	Causes no change to the TPM, since there is no command to process.
8	Ready	1	0	X	1	0	0			Ready	1	0	X	No effect on TPM, since it is ready to receive commands.
9	Ready	1	0	X				Write first byte		Reception	0	0	1	Clear TPM_STS_x.commandReady on first byte.

#	Present State of TPM_STS_x				Fields / Data Written to TPM_STS_x or TPM_DATA_FIFO.x					Next State & Result / Reason				Action Taken
	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	C/RT	G	R/R	Write Data	Read Data	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	*Informative*
10	Ready	1	0	X					Read Data	Ready	1	0	X	No effect on TPM. TPM returns FFh.
11	Reception	0	0	1	0	0	1			Reception	0	0	1	There is no response to retry. No state change.
12	Reception	0	0	1	0	1	0			Reception	0	0	1	TpmGo is not valid at this time. TPM ignores this state transition.
13	Reception	0	0	1	1	0	0			Idle	0	0	0	The command being sent to the TPM is aborted.
14	Reception	0	0	1				Write more data other than last byte		Reception	0	0	1	
15	Reception	0	0	1				Write last byte		Reception	0	0	0	Good transmission if the software has just sent the last byte. If either software has more than one more byte to send or if expect = 1 and software has not more data to send, this is a transmission error and the software must resend the command.
16	Reception	0	0	1					Read data	Reception	0	0	1	TPM returns FFh.
17	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	1			Reception	0	0	0	No response to retry.
18	Reception	0	0	0	0	1	0			Execution	0	0	0	This is the normal transition from sending the command to the start of execution of the command.
19	Reception	0	0	0	1	0	0			Idle	0	0	0	Aborts the command sent.
20	Reception	0	0	0				Write		Reception	0	0	0	Write is not expected. Drop write. TPM ignores this state transition.
21	Reception	0	0	0					Read	Reception	0	0	0	Read 0xFF.
22	Execution	0	0	0	—	—	—	—	—	Completion	0	1	0	Upon command completion, TPM sets TPM_STS_x.dataAvail to a 1.
23	Execution	0	0	0	0	0	1			Execution	0	0	0	There is no response to retry. No state change.
24	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0			Execution	0	0	0	The TPM is already executing a command. No state change.
25	Execution	0	0	0	1	0	0			Idle	0	0	0	The executing command is aborted.
26	Execution	0	0	0				Write data		Execution	0	0	0	TPM drops write, since it is not expecting data. If the software was sending a command and still has data to write, then this is an error in transmission and the software must re-transmit the command.
27	Execution	0	0	0					Read data	Execution	0	0	0	TPM returns FFh, since TPM_STS_x.dataAvail is not set.
28	Completion	0	1	0	0	0	1			Completion	0	1	0	TPM resets ReadFIFO pointers and start sending the response from the first byte.
29	Completion	0	1	0	0	1	0			Completion	0	1	0	Causes no change to the TPM, no new command to execute.
30	Completion	0	1	0	1	0	0			Idle	0	0	0	Aborts command.
31	Completion	0	1	0				Write data		Completion	0	1	0	No effect on TPM, it is not accepting a command.

#	Present State of TPM_STS_x				Fields / Data Written to TPM_STS_x or TPM_DATA_FIFO.x					Next State & Result / Reason				Action Taken
	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	C/R	TG	R/R	Write Data	Read Data	TPM State	C/R	D/A	E	*Informative*
32	Completion	0	1	0					Read data other than last byte	Completion	0	1	0	TPM returns data.
33	Completion	0	1	0					Read last byte	Completion	0	0	0	Good transmission, since TPM_STS_x.dataAvail = 0.
35	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	1			Completion	0	1	0	TPM resets ReadFIFO pointers and start sending the response from the first byte.
36	Completion	0	0	0	0	1	0			Completion	0	0	0	TpmGo is not valid at this time. TPM ignores this state transition.
37	Completion	0	0	0	1	0	0			Idle	0	0	0	This is the typical state change resulting from the software's indication that it received the results of the command, and the TPM may proceed to the Idle state and, depending on implementation, proceed directly to the Ready state.
38	Completion	0	0	0				Write		Completion	0	0	0	Write is not expected. Drop write. TPM ignores this state transition.
39	Completion	0	0	0					Read	Completion	0	0	0	Read 0XFF.
40	Any				More than 1 field set on any status write					undefined				If a write to this register contains more than one 1 field, the behavior of the status register is undefined in this specification and the behavior between TPM implementations may differ.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 97
May 22, 2017

5.5.3   CRB Interface Requirements

5.5.3.1   CRB Addresses

A TPM compliant with this specification will implement the command and response buffers at the specified location for TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_x. The CRB registers TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_x, TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_x, and TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_x return the address of the TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_x on read requests. For TPMs implemented to comply with other platform specifications that utilize the CRB interface, these registers may return addresses other than the PC Client defined address. For a PC Client compliant TPM, these fields will return the address defined in Table 23.

The fields within the CRB Interface are naturally aligned so that 8 bit fields are located at 8-bit addressable locations and 64-bit fields are at 64-bit addressable locations. For this reason, the addresses for the Command Buffer are separated into 2 32-bit fields, as it is not on a 64-bit addressable boundary. An 8-bit addressable location located on a 64-bit boundary may not be accessible using a 64-bit transaction.

Some instantiating hardware may have size and alignment restrictions when accessing any of the fields in this interface. Some hardware may require access to any of data within a field or buffer be performed by reads or writes which are naturally aligned. For this reason, software should access the fields and buffers defined in this interface using instructions which do not cause an access to cross an alignment boundary and should not use string move instructions.

For example:

- Accessing the Response Address using a 64-bit access will work; accessing the Command Address using a 64-bit access may not work.

Table 23 — Address Allocation for CRB TPM Access

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 0		
0003h-0000h	TPM_LOC_STATE_0	Used to determine current state of locality of the TPM. This register is aliased across all localities. Read-only.
0007h-0004h	Undefined	Reserved
000Bh-0008h	TPM_LOC_CTRL_0	Used to gain control of the TPM by this locality.
000Fh-000Ch	TPM_LOC_STS_0	Used to determine whether locality has been granted or Seized. Read-only. This register SHALL NOT be aliased.
002Fh-0010h	Reserved	Reserved
0037h-0030h	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0	Used to identify the Interface types supported by the TPM as well as the Vendor ID, Device ID and Revision ID
003Fh-0038h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_EXT	Optional Register used in low memory environments prior to CRB_DATA_BUFFER availability. This field is not implemented in HW TPM's. This field is only available in Locality 0.
0043h-0040h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0	Register used to initiate transactions for the CRB interface. This register may be aliased across localities.
0047h-0044h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_0	Register used by the TPM to provide status of the CRB interface. This register may be aliased across localities
004Bh-0048h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0	Register used by software to cancel command processing. This register may be aliased across localities.
004Fh-004Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0	Register used to indicate presence of command or response data in the CRB buffer. This register may be aliased across localities
0053h-0050h	TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_0	Register used to configure interrupts. This register may be aliased across localities
0057h-0054h	TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0	Register used to respond to interrupts. This register may be aliased across localities
005Bh-0058h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0	Size of the Command buffer. This register may be aliased across localities.
005Fh-005Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0	Lower 32bits of the Command buffer start address for Locality 0. This register may be aliased across localities.
0063h-0060h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0	Upper 32bits of the Command buffer start address for Locality 0. This register may be aliased across localities.
0067h-0064h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0	Size of the Response buffer, **Note**: If command and response buffers are implemented as a single buffer, this field SHALL be identical to the value in the TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_x buffer. This register may be aliased across localities.
006Fh-0068h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_0	Address of the start of the Response buffer. **Note**: If command and response buffers are implemented as a single buffer, this field SHALL contain the same address contained in TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_x and TPM_CRB_CMD_LADDR_x. This register may be aliased across localities.
007Fh-0070h	Reserved	Reserved

Offset	Register Name	Description
0880h-0080h	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0	Command/Response Data may be defined as large as 3968. This is implementation-specific, however, the full address space has been reserved. This buffer may be aliased across localities. This field accepts data transfers from 1B up to the size indicated by TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x.CapDataXferSizeSupport (see section 5.4.2.2 CRB Interface Identifier Register).
0FFFh-0881h	Reserved	Reserved for maximum size of Command/Response Buffer
Locality 1		
1003h-1000h	TPM_LOC_STATE_1	Same as TPM_LOC_STATE_0
1007h-1004h	Reserved	Reserved
100Bh-1008h	TPM_LOC_CTRL_1	Used to gain control of the TPM by this locality.
100Fh-100Ch	TPM_LOC_STS_1	Used to determine whether locality has been granted or Seized. Read-only. This register SHALL NOT be aliased.
102Fh-1010h	Reserved	Reserved
1037h-1030h	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_1	Same as TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0
103Fh-1038h	Reserved	Reserved
1043h-1040h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0
1047h-1044h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_1	Same as TPM CRB_CTRL_STS_0
104Bh-1048h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0
104Fh-104Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0
1053h-1050h	TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_1	Same as TPM_CRB_ INT_ENABLE_0
1057h-1054h	TPM_CRB_INT_STS_1	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0
105Bh-1058h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0
105Fh-105Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0
1063h-1060h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0
1067h-1064h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_1	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0
106Fh-1068h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_1	Same as TPM_CRB_RSP_ADDR_0
107Fh-1070h	Reserved	Reserved
1880h-1080h	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_1	Same as TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0
1FFFh-1881h	Reserved	Reserved for maximum size of Command/Response Buffer

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 2		
2003h-2000h	TPM_LOC_STATE_2	Same as TPM_LOC_STATE_0
2007h-2004h	Reserved	Reserved
200Bh-2008h	TPM_LOC_CTRL_2	Used to gain control of the TPM by this locality.
200Fh-200Ch	TPM_LOC_STS_2	Used to determine whether locality has been granted or Seized. Read-only. This register SHALL NOT be aliased.
202Fh-2010h	Reserved	Reserved
2037h-2030h	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_2	Same as TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0
203Fh-2038h	Reserved	Reserved
2043h-2040h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0
2047h-2044h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_2	Same as TPM CRB_CTRL_STS_0
204Bh-2048h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0
204Fh-204Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0
2053h-2050h	TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_2	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_0
2057h-2054h	TPM_CRB_INT_STS_2	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0
205Bh-2058h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0
205Fh-205Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0
2063h-2060h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0
2067h-2064h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_2	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0
206Fh-2068h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_2	Same as TPM_CRB_RSP_ADDR_0
207Fh-2070h	Reserved	Reserved
2880h-2080h	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_2	Same as TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0
2FFFh-2881h	Reserved	Reserved for maximum size of Command/Response Buffer

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 101
May 22, 2017

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 3		
3003h-3000h	TPM_LOC_STATE_3	Same as TPM_LOC_STATE_0
3007h-3004h	Reserved	Reserved
300Bh-3008h	TPM_LOC_CTRL_3	Used to gain control of the TPM by this locality.
300Fh-300Ch	TPM_LOC_STS_3	Used to determine whether locality has been granted or Seized. Read-only. This register SHALL NOT be aliased.
302Fh-3010h	Reserved	Reserved
3037h-3030h	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_3	Same as TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0
303Fh-3038h	Reserved	Reserved
3043h-3040h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0
3047h-3044h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_3	Same as TPM CRB_CTRL_STS_0
304Bh-3048h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0
304Fh-304Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0
3053h-3050h	TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_3	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_0
3057h-3054h	TPM_CRB_INT_STS_3	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0
305Bh-3058h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0
305Fh-305Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0
3063h-3060h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0
3067h-3064h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_3	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0
306Fh-3068h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_3	Same as TPM_CRB_RSP_ADDR_0
307Fh-3070h	Reserved	Reserved
3880h-3080h	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_3	Same as TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0
3FFFh-3881h	Reserved	Reserved for maximum size of Command/Response Buffer

Offset	Register Name	Description
Locality 4		
4003h-4000h	TPM_LOC_STATE_4	Same as TPM_LOC_STATE_0
4007h-4004h	Undefined	Reserved
400Bh-4008h	TPM_LOC_CTR_4	Used to gain control of the TPM by this locality.
400Fh-400Ch	TPM_LOCALITY_STS_4	Used to determine whether locality has been granted or Seized. Read-only. This register SHALL NOT be aliased.
402Fh-4010h	Undefined	Reserved
4037h-4030h	TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_4	Same as TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_0
403Fh-4038h	Undefined	Reserved
4043h-4040h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_0
4047h-4044h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_4	Same as TPM CRB_CTRL_STS_0
404Bh-4048h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_0
404Fh-404Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_0
4053h-4050h	TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_4	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_0
4057h-4054h	TPM_CRB_INT_STS_4	Same as TPM_CRB_INT_STS_0
405Bh-4058h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_SIZE_0
405Fh-405Ch	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_LADDR_0
4063h-4060h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_CMD_HADDR_0
4067h-4064h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_4	Same as TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_SIZE_0
406Fh-4068h	TPM_CRB_CTRL_RSP_ADDR_4	Same as TPM_CRB_RSP_ADDR_0
407Fh-4070h	Undefined	Reserved
4880h-4080h	TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_4	Same as TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_0
4FFFh-4881h	Reserved	Reserved for maximum size of Command/Response Buffer
Non-locality Specific Registers		
5FFFh-5000h	Reserved	Reserved
All addresses not defined in the table above	Reserved, reads return FFh; writes are dropped.	

5.5.3.2   Locality Support

The concept of locality, as described in Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions, is
2305   interface agnostic, but the registers used to interact with the TPM at various localities
are necessarily different. This section describes the registers used to request and use
of the TPM at various localities.

5.5.3.2.1   Locality State Register

This register is a read-only register used by host software to determine the current
2310   state of the TPM with respect to locality. This register leverages some of the
functionality from the FIFO ACCESS register. This register is aliased across all
localities.

This register gates access to the TPM_CRB_CRTL_x and TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_x registers.

2315 The default state of this register at power on of the TPM has no locality active. This results in any writes to the Control Area or Data Buffer getting dropped.

1. The TPM SHALL implement the TPM_LOC_STATE register as defined in Table 24. The initial state of this register at power on SHALL clear the TPM_LOC_STATE_x.locAssigned field to 0 and TPM_LOC_STATE_x.activeLocality
2320 field to 000.

2. TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished SHALL be valid when tpmRegValidSts is set to 1.

   a. TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished SHALL be set to 1 when TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishmentBit is set to 1

2325 b. TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished SHALL be cleared to 0 upon receipt of a _TPM_HASH_END.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT set TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmRegValidSts to 1 unless all other fields are valid.

Table 24 — TPM_LOC_STATE Definition

Abbreviation:			TPM_LOC_STATE_x		
General Description:			Used to determine status of the locality controls of the TPM.		
Bit Descriptions:					
7	Read Only	tpmRegValidSts	Default 0h		This bit indicates whether all other bits of this register contain valid values, if it is a 1.
6:5	Read Only	Reserved	0h		Reserved: **Reads return 0.**
4:2	Read Only	activeLocality	0h		**000 – Locality 0** **001 – Locality 1** **010 – Locality 2** **011 – Locality 3** **100 – Locality 4** **101:111 – Reserved:** This bit field informs host SW as to which locality currently has access to the TPM.
1	Read Only	locAssigned	0h		A 0 indicates to the host that no locality is assigned, a 1 indicates a locality has been assigned.
0	Read Only	tpmEstablished	1h		The TPM clears this bit to 0 upon receipt of _TPM_Hash_End The TPM sets this bit to a 1 when the TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishment field is set to 1.

2330 **5.5.3.2.2 Locality Control Register**

The TPM_LOC_CTRL register is used by each locality to request use of or seize control of the TPM. This register is unique for each locality. This register is defined to be read/write capable.

The functionality described in this register is specific to Localities 0-3. There are 2335 unique requirements for Locality 4.

For the caller to send a command to the TPM, it must first request use of the TPM through the locality control method. If locality is not granted, the CRB data buffer drops any command.

5.5.3.2.2.1   Locality Control Register for Localities 0-3

2340   1. The TPM SHALL implement the TPM_LOC_CTRL register as defined in Table 25.

Table 25 — TPM_LOC_CTRL_x Register Definition

Abbreviation:				TPM_LOC_CTRL_x	
General Description:				Used to gain ownership of the TPM	
Bit Descriptions:					
31:4	Write Only	Reserved	0h	Reserved. Reads return 0.	
3	Write Only	resetEstablishmentBit	0h	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Reset TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished bit if the write occurs from Locality 3 or 4. Valid indicator: NA	
2	Write Only	Seize	0h	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): The TPM gives control of the TPM to the locality setting this bit if it is the higher priority locality.	
1	Write Only	Relinquish	0h	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): The active locality is done with the TPM.	
0	Write Only	requestAccess	0h	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored. Writes (1): Interrupt the TPM and generate a locality arbitration algorithm. **Note:** This field corresponds to the TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse field in the FIFO implementation.	

5.5.3.2.2.2   Locality Control Register for Locality 4

Table 26 — TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 Register Definition

Abbreviation:				TPM_LOC_CTRL_4
General Description:				Used to perform actions of DRTM Sequence
Bit Descriptions:				
31:4	Write Only	Reserved	0h	Reads return 0h
3	Write Only	resetEstablishment	0h	Reads always return 0 Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Reset TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished bit if the write occurs from Locality 3 or 4. Valid indicator: NA
2	Write Only	TPM_HASH_END	0h	Reads return 0h Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Initiates the HASH_END TPM actions (see Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions)
1	Write Only	TPM_HASH_DATA	0h	Reads return 0h Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Initiates the HASH_DATA TPM actions (see 4.2 Section Locality-Controlled Functions)
0	Write Only	TPM_HASH_START	0h	Reads return 0h Writes (0): Ignored Writes (1): Initiates the HASH_START TPM actions (see Section 4.2 Locality-Controlled Functions)

2345 ***Bit Field: resetEstablishmentBit***

This field is used to replace functionality provided by the TSC_ResetEstablishmentBit command in TPM 1.2. This command is not present in TPM 2.0, but this interface mechanism provides equivalent functionality.

This field is used to reset the state of the TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished bit, once 2350 that bit has been set to 0 by a D-RTM sequence. A write to this field will be processed by the TPM as if a command has been received. Once this field is written, the TPM will clear TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_x.cmdReady until the TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished bit has been cleared.

This field can only be written from Localities 3 and 4.

2355 1. Reads to TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishmentBit SHALL always return 0.

2. For Localities 0-2, writes are ignored.

3. For Localities 3 and 4

   a. Writes of 0 are ignored

   b. On a write of 1, when in the Ready or Idle state the TPM SHALL set
2360   TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished   to   1   and   clear
      TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishmentBit to 0 within TIMEOUT_A.

Bitfield: TPM_HASH_START/_DATA/_END

These fields are used to instantiate an H-CRTM or DRTM sequence as defined in Section 4.2 <u>Locality-Controlled Functions</u>. There is no data placed in these fields. The data is placed in the command/response buffer. The normative behavior for these fields is documented in section 4.2.1 <u>DRTM Execution Sequence</u>.

2365

1. A write to TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_START SHALL be defined to invoke the _TPM_Hash_Start interface command as defined in the TPM 2 Library Specification and perform the actions of HASH_START in Section 4.2.1 <u>DRTM Execution Sequence.</u>

2370

2. A write to TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_DATA SHALL be defined to invoke the _TPM_Hash_Data interface command as defined in the TPM 2 Library Specification and perform the actions of HASH_DATA in Section 4.2.1 <u>DRTM Execution Sequence.</u>

2375

3. A write to TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_END SHALL be defined to invoke the _TPM_Hash_End interface command as defined in the TPM 2 Library Specification and perform the actions of HASH_END in Section 4.2.1 <u>DRTM Execution Sequence.</u>

5.5.3.2.2.3   LOCALITY_STATUS Register

Table 27 —TPM_LOC_STS

Abbreviation:				TPM_LOC_STS_x
General Description:				
Bit Descriptions:				
31:2	Read Only	Reserved	0h	Reads return 0
1	Read Only	beenSeized	0h	0: A higher locality has not initiated a Seize arbitration process. 1: A higher locality has Seized the TPM from this locality.
0	Read Only	Granted	0h	0: Locality has not been granted to the TPM. 1: Locality has been granted access to the TPM

2380   This register is unique for each locality.

5.5.3.3   Control Area Extension

The Control Area Extension is used by early platform software or firmware to implement a mechanism to send/receive command/response data in chunks. This area is optional, and is only available to pre-OS firmware, as it is intended to provide a mechanism to use the Command/Response buffer in memory limited environments.

2385

Note: This field is not available in discrete TPM implementations.

This field is intended to be used before system RAM is available.

1. If implemented, the control area size extension SHALL be in ACPI AddressRangeReserved memory.

2390

2. If the pre-memory command/response buffer is less than 512 bytes, the TPM SHALL implement this field.

3. If the pre-memory command/response buffer is 512 bytes or larger, the TPM SHALL disable this field.

Table 28 — TPM CRB Control Area Extension

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_CTRL_EXT_x
General Description:				Control Area Extension
Bit Descriptions:				
63:32	Read /Write	Remaining Bytes	0h	Number of command/response bytes in a chunk that remain to be transferred
31:0	Read Only	Clear	0h	Used by software to cancel the transfer of command/response data chunks Set to 1 by software to cancel a transaction using the chunk mechanism Cleared to 0 by the TPM once transaction has been cancelled.

2395 *Bitfield: Clear*

This field is used to cancel a transaction to the TPM and reset the mechanism that transfers command/response data to/from the TPM in chunks. After the reset is complete, the TPM will set this field back to 0.

This field can be used to cancel a command after the software sets
2400 TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Start to 1 but prior to writing the last chunk of data to the data buffer.

1. In Command Reception:

   a. The TPM SHALL ignore writes of 0 to this field.

   b. On a write of 1 to this field, the TPM SHALL:

2405   i. Perform the actions for TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Cancel

          ii. Clear this field to 0.

2. In Command Completion:

   a. The TPM SHALL ignore writes of 0 to this field.

   b. On a write of 1 to this field, the TPM SHALL:

2410   i. Stop sending the response

          ii. Retain all TPM state at the completion of the command

          iii. Clear this field to 0.

3. In any other phase, the TPM SHALL ignore writes to this field.

Bitfield: Remaining Bytes

2415 This field is used to indicate the number of bytes remaining in each chunk of a transaction to/from the TPM in the early pre-OS environment. The field is set to a non-zero value following the write of a chunk to the command/response buffer. Once the data is read from the buffer, the receiver will reset the field to 0.

1. The TPM SHALL initialize this field to 0.

Page 108
May 22, 2017

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

2420   2. On a write transaction:

   a. The TPM SHALL sequentially read the chunks of the command from the command/response buffer.

   b. The TPM SHALL clear this field to zero once each chunk of data is read from the command/response buffer.

2425   c. The TPM SHALL enter the Command Execution phase.

   3. On a read transaction:

   a. The TPM SHALL write a chunk of data to the command/response buffer.

   b. The TPM SHALL set this field to the value equal to the number of bytes in the response.

2430   c. When this field is cleared to 0, the TPM SHALL repeat 3.a and 3.b for the remaining bytes of the response.

   d. When all response data has been written to the command/response buffer, the TPM SHALL enter Idle.

5.5.3.4   Control Area Request Register

2435   The Control Area Request register is used to manage TPM states as defined in Section 5.5.3.8 Interface Controls

Table 29 — TPM CRB Control Area Request

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x
General Description:				Control Area Request
Bit Descriptions:				
31:2	Read/Write	Reserved		Reserved. Read's return 0. Writes are ignored.
1	Read / Write	goIdle	0	Used by Software to indicate transition the TPM to and from the Idle state 1: Set by Software to indicate response has been read from the response buffer and TPM can transition to Idle 0: Cleared to 0 by TPM to acknowledge completion of the state change request to the Idle state with the resulting state reflected in the TPM_CRB_STS_x.tpmIdle field. TPM SHALL complete this transition within TIMEOUT_C. Writes of 0 are ignored.
0	Read /Write	cmdReady	0	Used by Software to request the TPM transition to the Ready State. 1: Set to 1 by Software to indicate the TPM should be ready to receive a command. 0: Cleared to 0 by TPM to acknowledge completion of the state change request to the Idle state with the resulting state reflected in the TPM_CRB_STS_x.tpmIdle field. TPM SHALL complete this transition within TIMEOUT_C Writes of 0 are ignored.

Bitfield cmdReady

2440   The cmdReady field is analogous to the FIFO TPM_ACCESS_x.cmdReady field. It is written by software to transition the TPM to the Ready State from the Idle State.

When in the Idle State, the TPM may perform background tasks, such as random number or key generation, or it may turn off some of its internal functions to conserve power. Because of the non-deterministic nature of what the TPM may be doing in the

2445   background, it is necessary to define a time within which the TPM must respond to a request to transition to the Ready state. This time, TIMEOUT_C, is the maximum amount of time a driver will need to wait before determining the TPM or its interface have encountered an error. TPM manufacturers should implement their TPMs to transition to the Ready State as quickly as possible.

2450   In this version of the specification, a new, optional behavior was introduced. There may be cases where software has a queue of commands to issue to the TPM. Some TPM implementations are limited in their ability to quickly transition from Command Completion to Idle and from Idle to Ready. These TPMs may now support the ability to bypass the Idle state and transition directly to the Ready state from Command

2455   Completion. The ability to support this feature is reported in the field TPM_CRB_INTF_ID.CapCRBIdleBypass. If this field is set to 1, calling software may exercise this new behavior by writing this field from the Command Completion state and the TPM will transition directly to ready. As there is no interface mechanism to distinguish between the Command Completion and Ready states, calling software may

2460   need to write this field twice to ensure the TPM is in the Ready state. TPM implementations that do not support this behavior are expected to perform the transition from Command Completion to Idle and from Idle to Ready in a shorter time frame than the sum of the timeouts for both state transitions. As TPM implementations use the Idle state to perform background processing that improves

2465   overall performance and reduce power consumption, software should not exercise this behavior unless there are multiple TPM commands in their queue.

1. Reads to this field SHALL be valid within TIMEOUT_D from _TPM_INIT.

2. If TPM_CRB_INTF_ID.CapCRBIdleBypass is cleared to 0:

    a. On a write of 1 to this field, the TPM SHALL transition from Idle to Ready State.

2470   b. The TPM SHALL acknowledge the write by clearing the field to 0 within TIMEOUT_C.

    c. Writes of 0 are ignored

3. If TPM_CRB_INTF_ID.CapCRBIdleBypass is set to 1,

    a. On a write of 1, the TPM SHALL transition from Command Completion to Ready

2475   State.

    b. The TPM SHALL acknowledge the write by clearing the field to 0 within TIMEOUT_C.

    c. Writes of 0 are ignored.

Bitfield goIdle

2480   When in the Command Completion state, SW will use this field to communicate to the TPM that it has received all of the response data and the TPM may invalidate its buffer and transition to Idle.

2485

There are occasions where an active transaction needs to be aborted. The driver and TPM may get out of synchronization. There may be a power transition that occurs prior to the TPM entering Command Execution. In these cases, it is desirable to have a mechanism to cause the TPM to transition back to the Idle state. This operation is not the same as a FIFO command abort, see Section 5.5.2.3.1 <u>Command Aborts</u>, but provides a limited approximation of that functionality.

2490

Note: When in the Command Execution phase, a transaction cannot be aborted. The only option to interrupt the processing of the current command is to perform a Command Cancel.

1. Reads to this field SHALL be valid within TIMEOUT_D from _TPM_INIT.

2. On a write to this field of 1, the TPM SHALL acknowledge the write by clearing the field to 0 within TIMEOUT_C.

2495

3. On a write of 1, the TPM SHALL invalidate the Command/Response buffer and transition to Idle and set TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_x.tpmIdle to 1.

4. Once a response is placed in the Command/Response buffer, the TPM SHALL maintain the response until SW sets this field to 1.

2500

5. When the TPM is in the Ready, Command Reception, or Command Completion states, if TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.Request.goIdle is set to 1:

   a. The TPM SHALL invalidate the command/response buffer,

   b. The TPM SHALL set the TPM_CRB_CTR_STS_x to 0002h, and then

   c. The TPM SHALL clear the TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.Request.x field to 0000h.

2505

6. When the TPM is in the Command Execution state, the TPM SHALL ignore writes to the Request field. The behavior of the TPM is not specified further.

7. Writes of 0 are ignored.

5.5.3.5 Control Area Status Register

This register is used to indicate the current state and status of the TPM.

2510

Table 30 — TPM CRB Control Area Status

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_x
General Description:				Control Area Status
Bit Descriptions:				
31:2	Read Only	Reserved		Reserved. Read's SHALL return 0's.
1	Read Only	tpmIdle	0	Used by TPM to indicate it is in the Idle State 1: Set by TPM when in the Idle State 0: Cleared by TPM on receipt of TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.cmdReady when TPM transitions to the Ready State. SHALL be cleared by TIMEOUT_C.
0	Read Only	tpmSts	0	Used by the TPM to indicate current status. 1: Set by TPM to indicate a FATAL Error 0: Indicates TPM is operational

Bitfield: tpmIdle

The tpmIdle field is used by the TPM to indicate its current state. The TPM sets this field to indicate that it is in the Idle state and clears it to indicate it is in the Ready State.

2515 The default state of this field indicates the TPM is in the Idle State.

1. Reads to this field SHALL be valid within TIMEOUT_D from _TPM_INIT.

2. The TPM SHALL set this field to 1 if going to Idle state.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT set this field to 1 if in any state other than Idle.

4. On a write to TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.cmdReady of 1, the TPM SHALL clear this
2520 field and go to the Ready state within TIMEOUT_C

Bitfield:tpmSts

The tpmSts field is used by the TPM to indicate its current status. This field should only be used for fatal errors for which a TPM response code cannot be provided. An example is: the response buffer is not in physical memory. Software may stop using 2525 the TPM when this field is set. The initial state of this field should reflect the operational state of the TPM.

NOTE*:* Some platforms may not be able to trigger TPM commands based on the start field in the control area and may require the implementation of an optional ACPI Start method to allow software to request the system to execute a TPM command. The use of 2530 the ACPI Start method is determined by the Start Method field of the TPM2 ACPI table defined in the Firmware spec.

1. Reads to this field SHALL be valid within TIMEOUT_D from _TPM_INIT.

2. The TPM MAY set this field to 1 on a fatal error.

3. The TPM SHALL NOT set this field to 1 for any other reason.

2535 ## 5.5.3.6   Control Area Cancel Register

Cancel may be used by software to request the TPM to terminate processing the current command. Software might request this because the system is going to a lower power state. The TPM will either complete the currently processing command and return the result, or will cancel the command and return the return code 2540 TPM_RC_Canceled. In general, for long running commands, the TPM may have checkpoints in its code to check the state of the Cancel field. If, at one of these checkpoints, the TPM sees a Command Cancel request, the TPM has the option of canceling the command or completing the command. TPM's are not required to perform this check.

2545 Cancel is an asynchronous input. Driver writers should take care in use of this function in their drivers, as the TPM could enter a state where it would process no commands. This case may occur if SW sends a Cancel, but fails to clear it. A TPM may be implemented in such that it will continue to cancel or complete the command and transition to Command Completion with a result. Alternatively, TPMs may be 2550 implemented such that they only cancel a single command. Driver writers should take care to send Command Cancel requests only when the TPM is in Command Execution state and to only clear the field when the TPM has exited Command Execution to avoid race conditions.

When the TPM is in Command Execution, and it receives a Seize request, the TPM will 2555 treat Seize as a Command Cancel followed by a transition to Idle.

Table 31 — TPM CRB Control Cancel

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_CTRL_CANCEL_x
General Description:				Control Area Cancel
Bit Descriptions:				
31:0	Read / Write	Cancel	0000 0000h	Used by software to cancel command processing Reads return correct value Writes (0000 0001h): Cancel a command Writes (0000 0000h): Clears field when command has been cancelled

1. When the TPM is in the Command Execution state and this field is set to 0001h:

a. The TPM MAY terminate command processing,

b. The TPM SHALL return a response and transition to the Command Completion
2560   state:

   i. If the command is successfully completed, the TPM SHALL return the
       command response.

   ii. If the command is terminated, the TPM SHALL return TPM_RC_CANCELED.

   iii. The TPM SHALL complete the command or cancel it within TIMEOUT_B.

2565   iv. The TPM SHALL clear the Start field to 0000 0000h.

2. When the TPM is in any state other than Command Execution, the TPM SHOULD
    ignore this field.

5.5.3.7 Control Area Start Register

Start is used by software to signal the TPM to begin processing the contents of the
2570 Command/Response Buffer and transition the TPM into Command Execution. When
the TPM has completed or cancelled a command, the TPM clears this field and
transitions to Command Completion.

Software should poll on this field to detect the TPM transitioning from Command
Execution to Command Completion.

2575   **Table 32 — TPM CRB Control Start**

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_x
General Description:				Control Area Start
Bit Descriptions:				
31:0	Read / Write	Start	0000 0000h	When set by software, indicates a command is ready for processing. Writes (0000 0001h): TPM transitions to Command Execution (0000 0000h): TPM clears this field and transitions to Command Completion

1. On a write of 0001h to the Start field:

a. If the TPM is in the Command Reception state, the TPM SHALL transition to
    Command Execution and begin processing the command in the buffer.

2580 b. If the TPM is in any other State, the TPM SHALL ignore the write.

2. The TPM SHALL ignore writes of 0 to this field.

3. When the TPM completes command processing, the TPM SHALL clear this field to
    0000h and transition to Command Completion.

5.5.3.8 Interface Controls

2585 The TPM is considered to be in one of the following defined states:

1. *Command Reception* occurs following a *Ready* state between the write of the first
    byte of a command to the Command Buffer and the receipt of a write of 1 to Start.

2. *Command Execution* occurs after receipt of a 1 to Start and the TPM clearing Start
    to 0.

2590
3. *Command Completion* occurs after completion of a command (indicated by the TPM clearing TPM_CRB_CTRL_Start_x to 0) and before a write of a 1 by the software to Request.goIdle.

4. *Idle* is any time TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_x.Status.goIdle is 1. This will occur when the TPM is in *Command Completion* on receipt of a write of 1 by the software to
2595
TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.goIdle and is signaled by the TPM setting Status.tpmIdle to 1. This will also occur following locality change. *Idle* is the initial state of TPM upon completion of _TPM_INIT. A TPM may skip this state on receipt of Request.cmdReady while in *Command Completion*.

5. *Ready* is any time the TPM is ready to receive a command, following a write of 1 by
2600
software to Request.cmdReady, as indicated by the Status field being cleared to 0.

The following informative diagram is derived from the above normative statements. It is informative and only for illustrating diagrammatically the above TPM states and their transitions. The numbers in parentheses reference the states represented by row numbers in Table 33 — CRB Interface State Transitions.
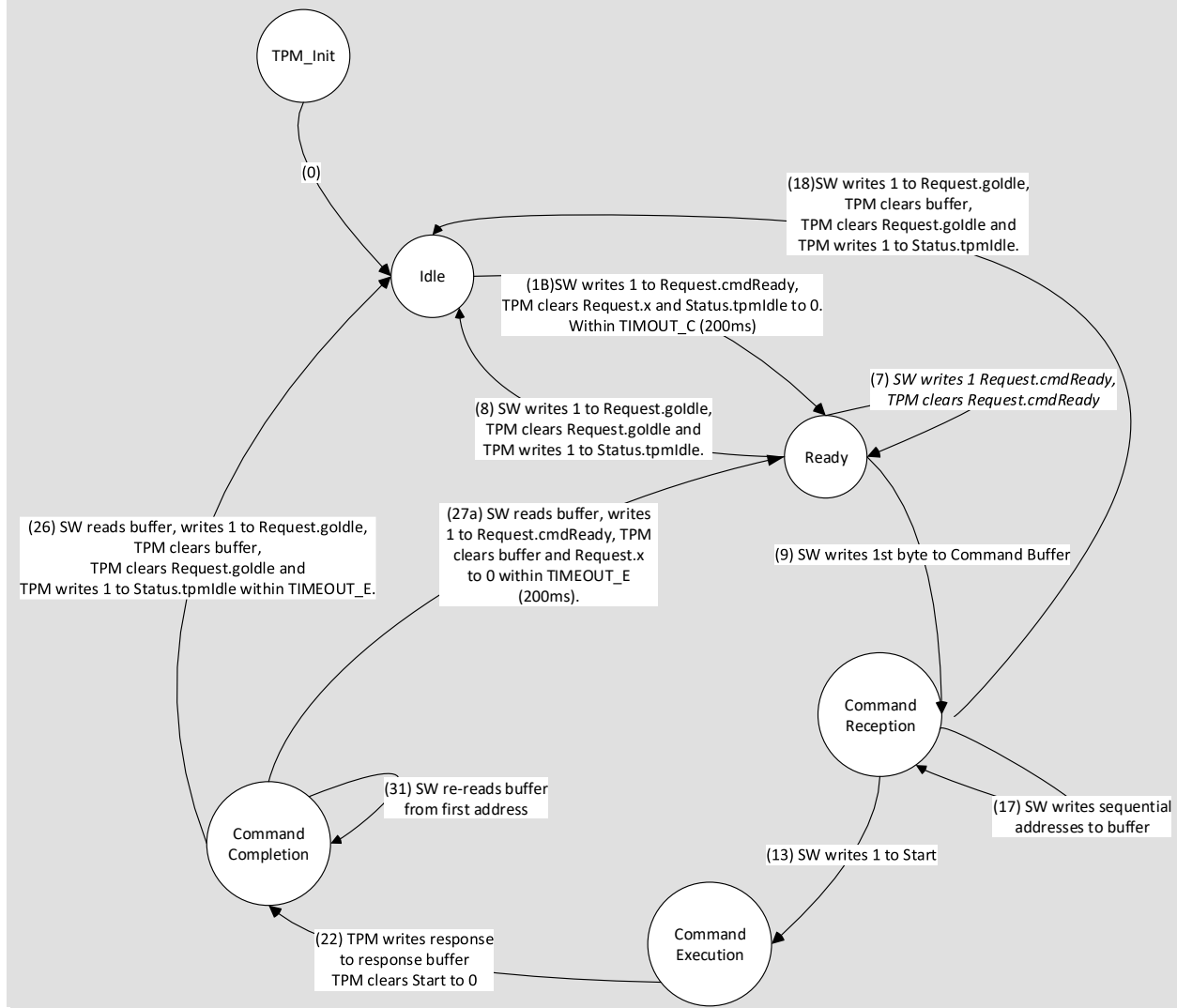
2605

Figure 4 — TPM State Diagram for CRB Interface

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22
TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017
Page 115
May 22, 2017

5.5.3.9   TPM CRB Buffer

5.5.3.9.1   Access Restrictions

2610

The command/response buffer may be implemented as a single buffer or as individual buffers. The data buffer is specified as having a minimum size large enough to handle the largest implemented TPM command or response with the maximum number of authorization handles and a hash algorithm of SHA-256.

The command/response buffer can only be accessed initially at the base address. Subsequent accesses are required to go to sequential addresses. In the case where software wants to reread a previous location, it must start at the base address.

2615

5.5.3.9.2   TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_x Access Restrictions

1. On a write to the buffer:

   a. If the initial transaction is to an address other than the base address for the buffer, the TPM MAY ignore the write.

2620
   b. If subsequent transactions are to non-sequential addresses, the TPM MAY ignore the write.

   c. If the transaction is a size other than 1 or power of 2 bytes, the TPM MAY ignore the write.

   d. The TPM MAY invalidate any existing data within the buffer upon a write to the base address of the buffer.

2625
   e. The TPM SHALL replace invalidated data with data written upon a write to the base address of the buffer.

   f. Following the write to the buffer and prior to a write to TPM_CRB_CTRL_START_x, the TPM MAY ignore read requests.

2630
2. On a read from the buffer:

   a. If the initial transaction is to an address other than the base address for the buffer, the TPM MAY ABORT the transaction, as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 <u>Bus Aborts</u>.

   b. If subsequent transactions are to non-sequential addresses, the TPM MAY abort the transaction, as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 <u>Bus Aborts</u>.
2635

   c. Following the first transaction, if a subsequent read to the base address occurs, the TPM SHALL return the data at the base address.

   d. On a write to the buffer, the TPM MAY ignore the data.

   e. The TPM SHALL maintain the response in the buffer until receipt of a write of 1 to TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.goIdle.
2640

5.5.3.10 CRB Interface State Transitions

Table 33 shows the changes in CRB Interface fields based on the command or action done to the TPM. Notice this is not a state transition table covering the states defined in 5.5.3.8 Interface Controls rather a table describing how the status fields change based on initial condition and action taken. The following rules apply to Table 33.
2645

1. There MAY be intermediate status field states, where a command has finished, but TPM_START field is not yet cleared. Software is expected to poll until the appropriate status field is set.

2650

2. This table applies only to CRB Interface field states where a locality has already been selected and no change in locality is performed.

3. The statements in the column labeled "Action Taken" are ***informative*** when shaded and are derived from normative statements contained within the definitions of the CRB Interface in Section 5.5.3 <u>CRB Interface Requirements</u>. If there is an inconsistency between this column and the statements within normative

2655   definitions of the CRB Interface fields take precedence.

4. Normal transitions are highlighted in yellow and are indexed to the state transitions illustrated in Figure 4.

5. The following abbreviations are used in Table 33:

Label	Bit Definition
C/R	TPM_REQ.cmdReady
gI	TPM_REQ.goIdle
I	TPM_STS_tpmIdle
St	TPM_STS_tpmSts
S	TPM_START
CC	TPM_COMMAND_CANCEL
—	No TPM access for the corresponding data element
X	Either 0 or 1. The TPM is allowed to maintain this field as either value for this state. Software SHALL be capable of managing the TPM if either case is implemented.

Table 33 — CRB Interface State Transitions

#	Present State of Control Area						Fields/Data Written					Next State & Result							Action Taken
	State	Request		Status		S	CC	Request			S	CC	State (Row)	Request		Status		S	CC	Description
		C/R	gI	I	St			C/R	gI	Command Response Buffer				C/R	gI	I	St			
0	Init	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	X	Idle (1)	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM Transitions from Init to Idle within TIMEOUT_B
1	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	-	X	X	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM Transitions to Ready within TIMEOUT_C
2	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	-	X	X	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM remains in Idle. TPM MAY ignore request.
3	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	X	-	1	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM remains in Idle. TPM ignores request
4	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	X	-	0	1	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	No command to Cancel. TPM remains in Idle. TPM SHOULD ignore Cancel field.
5	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	X	Write access to buffer	0	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM SHALL ignore any access to the C/R buffer
6	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	X	Read access to buffer	0	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM SHALL ignore any access to the C/R buffer
7	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	-	0	0	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Ready. TPM SHALL ignore request
8	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	-	0	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	Interface Reset. TPM goes to Idle state.
9	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	X	X	Write access to the buffer	0	0	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM receives command
10	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	1	0	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	No data in the buffer, TPM remains in Ready. TPM SHALL ignore request
11	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	1	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	No command to cancel. TPM remains in Ready. TPM SHALL Ignore request.
12	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	X	X	Read access to buffer	0	0	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	No response to read. TPM remains in Ready. TPM SHOULD ignore request.
13	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	1	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM transitions to Execution state. TPM begins processing command.
14	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	1	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Reception. TPM SHALL ignore request.
15	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	-	0	0	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM transitions to Ready.
16	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Reception.
17	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Read access to buffer	0	0	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Reception. TPM SHALL ignore request.
18	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Write access to the buffer	0	0	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM in Reception. TPM continues to receive data.

#	Present State of Control Area							Fields/Data Written					Next State & Result							Action Taken
	State	Request		Status		S	CC	Request			S	CC	State (Row)	Request		Status		S	CC	Description
		C/R	gl	I	St			C/R	gl	Command Response Buffer				C/R	gl	I	St			
19	Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	-	0	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	Abort Command Reception and return to Idle.
20	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	-	1	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM remains in Execution state. TPM MAY ignore writes to Start field.
21	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	-	X	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM remains in Execution state. TPM SHALL ignore request.
22	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	X	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM remains in Execution state. TPM SHALL ignore request.
23	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	-	X	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM clears Start field and transitions to Completion.
24	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0		X	1	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	The TPM shall transition to Completion. TPM MAY Cancel command. TPM SHALL respond with Return code within TIMEOUT_B.
25	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Write access to buffer	X	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM remains in Execution state. TPM MAY ignore write requests
26	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Read access to buffer	X	0	Execution	0	0	0	0	1	0	TPM remains in Execution state. TPM MAY ignore read requests
27	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	-	0	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Completion. TPM SHALL ignore request.
27a	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	-	0	0	Ready	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM SHALL transition to Ready if TPM_CAP_CRB_INTF.CapCRBIdleBypass is set to 1.
28	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	-	0	0	Idle	0	0	1	0	0	0	TPM transitions to Idle, invalidates buffer.
29	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	1	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Completion. TPM SHALL ignore request
30	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	1	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM remains in Completion. TPM SHALL ignore request
31	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Read access to buffer, sequential accesses	0	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	TPM returns data, remains in Completion and maintains data in buffer.
32	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Read access to buffer, non-sequential accesses	0	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	Invalid access. TPM MAY ignore the transaction.
33	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Read access, re-read from Base address	0	0	Completion	0	0	0	0	0	0	Retry. TPM resets internal byte counter and returns response from Base address.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 119
May 22, 2017

5.6   Interrupts

As use of the TPM is non-preemptive (except for the special case of Seize) and the TPM is single threaded, there is no issue with regard to sharing or colliding interrupts across localities. For example, if one locality starts a TPM operation, it cannot release the TPM to another locality until the pending TPM operation completes. However, if one locality (e.g., Locality 0) starts a long TPM operation, then turns control to another locality (e.g., Locality 2) before the long operation completes (and of course does not relinquish the TPM, which would cause a command abort), the second locality (e.g., Locality 2) would not know what the interrupt is for. This situation is outside the purview of this specification and negotiation of interrupt handling is done by the software.

When an event occurs that causes the TPM to signal an interrupt, the TPM must set the appropriate fields in the TPM_INT_STATUS_x or TPM_CRB_INT_STS_x register. If the TPM has not already sent an interrupt, the 0 to 1 transition of a field in the TPM_INT_STATUS_x or the TPM_CRB_INT_STS_x register must cause the TPM to assert the appropriate interrupt per the SIRQ or PIRQ protocol. The interrupt service routine will read the TPM_INT_STATUS_x or TPM_CRB_INT_STS_x register to determine the cause and take appropriate action. When the interrupt has been serviced, the interrupt service routine must do an End-of-Interrupt (EOI) to the I/O APIC to re-arm the TPM's interrupt in the I/O APIC. Then the interrupt service routine must also send a TPM_EOI to the TPM to allow it to send new interrupts.

The TPM must not issue another interrupt until it has received its TPM_EOI message (see below), even if new events occur that should cause an interrupt. The TPM should set the appropriate field in TPM_INT_STATUS_x or TPM CRB_INT_STS_x register, but the actual assertion of the interrupt will only occur after the TPM_EOI. If the interrupt handler detects multiple fields set, it may handle all the causes and clear multiple status fields. This means that an interrupt may be handled without actually causing a new interrupt.

The TPM_EOI to the TPM is writing a 1 to the field in the TPM_INT_STATUS_x or TPM_CRB_INT_STS_x register that corresponds to the type of interrupt just handled. Software may write multiple fields if it has handled multiple interrupt causes at one time.

The following informative sections are added for clarification. They should not change functionality.

If there are multiple fields set in the Interrupt register, and software does not clear all the interrupts, then the TPM must issue another interrupt after it sees the TPM_EOI, which is a write to the Interrupt register.

The software must not change the state of the TPM_INT_ENABLE_x globalIntEnable or TPM_CRB_INT_ENABLE_x.globalIntEnable flag while an interrupt is active.

For example: if after the write to the Interrupt register, there are fields still set, the TPM issues another interrupt. If software writes all the fields of the Interrupt register, so that after the write the register = 0, no new interrupt would be generated.

This covers the case that software handles one interrupt at a time and then returns. It also covers the case that software handles all the interrupts it knows about, so writes multiple fields into the Interrupt register, but a new interrupt is flagged between the time software read the Interrupt register and the time it wrote the TPM_EOI.

Application Note:

Many commands respond immediately so during normal operation the driver, after sending a command, should poll the TPM for a response keeping the interrupts masked. If the driver determines that the TPM will not be able to respond immediately, it will stop polling the TPM and unmask the appropriate set of interrupts. If the driver does this, there is a possibility of a race condition between the time the interrupt is unmasked and the state being checked becomes true. Therefore, after unmasking the interrupt(s,) the driver should poll the TPM one more time.

1. The TPM SHALL set the appropriate field indicating the cause of the interrupt in the TPM_INT_STATUS_x and TPM_CRB_INT_STS_x register.

2. Once an interrupt is asserted, the TPM SHALL NOT assert another interrupt until it receives a TPM_EOI even if new events occur that should cause an interrupt.

3. The TPM has only one interrupt assigned to it, so interrupt settings for one locality SHALL be applied to all localities.

5.6.1   LPC Interrupts

The method for asserting interrupts uses the Serial-IRQ (SIRQ) protocol for interrupts. The protocol emulates the set of individual hardware signals using time division multiplexing between frames. An understanding of the SIRQ protocol is critical to the TPM implementer. The direct assertion of the SIRQ line does not, in itself, signal an interrupt. The assertion of the interrupt is a combination of the change in the SIRQ signal during a time slot designated for that interrupt number. The state (level, edge, high, low) is expressed as the state of the SIRQ line during the assigned time slot over a series of frames.

The TPM must be designed to support asserting any of the IRQ[0:15]. Certain platforms may not support certain IRQs being assigned to the TPM; therefore, the TPM must be capable of asserting any of the 16 possible IRQs. The TPM must not assert PIRQ[A:D] in the SIRQ stream.

There is a capability register that allows each platform to indicate to the TPM which interrupts the platform supports.

The TPM reports all schemes it supports in the Interrupt Capabilities register bits 3-6. The software selects the scheme using the Interrupt Enable register bits 3-4. If the TPM supports only one scheme, bits 3 and 4 may be read only and return the value of the implemented scheme.

1. The TPM SHALL support the following interrupts:

   a. TPM_INT_STATUS_x.localityChangeIntOccured

   b. TPM_INT_STATUS_x.dataAvailIntOccured

2. The TPM MAY support the following interrupts:

   a. TPM_INT_STATUS_x.stsValidIntOccurred

   b. TPM_INT_STATUS_x.commandReadyIntOccured

3. The TPM SHALL support asserting any of the IRQ[0:15]. The TPM SHALL NOT assert PIRQ[A:D] in the SIRQ stream.

4. The TPM SHALL support low level interrupts, defined in Table 34, and MAY support the other interrupts. The TPM SHALL report all schemes it supports in the Interface Capabilities register.

2750 5. If the TPM supports only one scheme, bits 3 and 4 MAY be read-only and return the value of the implemented scheme.

6. The TPM SHALL maintain interrupts as inactive during any change to the TPM_INT_ENABLE_x globalIntEnable and while TPM_INT_ENABLE_x globalIntEnable is 0.

2755 **5.6.1.1 LPC Interrupt Enable**

Table 34 — LPC Interrupt Enable

Abbreviation:			TPM_INT_ENABLE_x		
General Description:			Enables specific interrupts and has the global enable. The TPM SHALL implement this register.		
Bit Descriptions:					
31	Read/ Write	globalIntEnable	Default:0	1 = Interrupts controlled by individual bits 0= All interrupts disabled. cleared to 0 on reset.	
30:8		Reserved	Reads always return 0		
7	Read/ Write	commandReadyEnable	Default: 0	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled	
6:5		reserved	Reads always return 0	Note to readers and future editors: This displacement of the enable fields (i.e. TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.commandReadyEnable not being adjacent to the other enable fields) here and in the tables below was done because the TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.commandReadyEnable field was added late in the draft cycle of this release (1.2). Some TPM manufacturers could not change their implementation in a timely manner if we moved the TPM_INT_ENABLE_x.typePolarity fields.	
4:3	Read/ Write	typePolarity	Default: 01	00 = High level 01 = Low level 10 = Rising edge 11 = Falling edge	
2	Read/ Write	localityChangeIntEnable	Default: 0	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled	
1	Read/ Write	stsValidIntEnable	Default: 0	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled	
0	Read/ Write	dataAvailIntEnable	Default: 0	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled	

5.6.1.2   Interrupt Status

Table 35 — Interrupt Status

Abbreviation:				TPM_INT_STATUS_x
General Description:				Shows which interrupt has occurred. The TPM SHALL implement this register.
Bit Descriptions:				
31:8		Reserved	Default : 0	Reads always return 0
7	Read / Write 1	commandReadyIntOccured	Default: 0	When 1, indicates the TPM_STS_x.commandReady field transitioned from 0 to 1. Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt. Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.
6:3		reserved	Default: 0	Reads always return 0
2	Read / Write 1	localityChangeIntOccured	Default: 0	When 1, indicates the locality change interrupt occurred. This interrupt is caused whenever any locality moves from TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality whenever this transition had been delayed due to another locality having TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality set. Note that if the TPM has no TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality set when TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse is written, the TPM SHALL move directly from TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse to TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality without causing the interrupt. Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt (i.e., a TPM_EOI). Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.
1	Read / Write 1	stsValidIntOccurred	Default: 0	This interrupt indicates a 0 to 1 transition on TPM_STS_x.stsValid. Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt. Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.
0	Read / Write 1	dataAvailIntOccured	Default: 0	This interrupt indicates that TPM_STS_x.dataAvail transitioned from a 0 to a 1. This 0 to 1 transition occurs when the command has been completed and there is a Response to be read. This transition SHALL only occur when both TPM_STS_x.dataAvail and TPM_STS_x.stsValid fields are 1. Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt. Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.

5.6.1.3   Interrupt Vector

2760   **Table 36 — Interrupt Vector**

Abbreviation:			TPM_INT_VECTOR_x	
General Description:			Contains the SIRQ value. The TPM SHALL implement this register.	
Bit Descriptions:				
7:4	Read Only	Reserved (0)	Default: 0	Read always return 0's; writes have no meaning.
3:0	Read / Write	sirqVec	Default: 0	A value of 0 means SIRQ is disabled and SIRQ is tristated. The SIRQ channel used by TPM can be from 1 to 15.

5.6.2   CRB Interrupts

During all interactions of the Software with the TPM there are several situations where Software has to wait for the TPM completing a requested action. Completion of a requested action will be indicated from the TPM to Software by a change of the corresponding status register change.

Actually there are 4 state transitions which may provide a benefit for the overall system performance when being indicated to the Software via an interrupt instead of polling:

2770
- **Locality Change:** Write 1 to TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.requestAccess => Wait for Locality x to be SET

- **Establishment Clear:** Write to TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishmentBit => Wait for TPM_ESTABLISHMENT == 1

- **TPM Ready:** Write 1 to TPM_CRB_CTRL_REQ_x.cmdReady => Wait for tpmIdle == 0

- **Response Available**: Write 1 to TPM_CRB_CTRL_x.Start => Wait for Start == 0

To allow for a flexible configuration and use of the interrupt it is necessary to provide the following fields:

- **Interrupt Enable:** Allows configuration of the TPM which interrupt source should be used

- **Interrupt Status:** Allows reading the source of an Interrupt asserted by the TPM

5.6.2.1 CRB Interrupt Control Register

Table 37 — CRB Interrupt Control

Abbreviation:			TPM_CRB_ INT_ ENABLE_x		
General Description:			Used to Control CRB Interrupts		
Bit Descriptions:					
31	R/W	globalInterruptEnable	Default: 0	0 = All interrupts are disabled 1 = Interrupt enable is controlled by the individual bits in this register	
30:4	R/O	Reserved	Default: 0	Reserved for future use	
3	R/W	localityChangeIntEnable	Default: 0	0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled	
2	R/W	establishmentClearIntEnable	Default: 0	0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled	
1	R/W	cmdReadyIntEnable	Default: 0	0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled	
0	R/W	startIntEnable	Default: 0	0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled	

2785

Table 38 — Interrupt Status

Abbreviation:				TPM_CRB_ INT_STS_x	
General Description:				Shows which interrupt has occurred.	
Bit Descriptions:					
31:4	R/O	Reserved	Default: 0	Reserved for future use	
3	Read/ Write 1	localityChangeInt	Default: 0	A 1 indicates that a locality change has occurred. This interrupt is caused whenever the value of bits 4:2 of the TPM_LOC_STATE register changes	
				Note: If the TPM has TPM_LOC_STATE_x.locAssigned == 0 before Request Use is set there will be no Interrupt because the TPM will make the transition immediately to the requesting locality	
				Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt.	
				Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.	
2	Read/ Write 1	establishmentClearInt	Default: 0	A 1 indicates that the reset of the TPM_LOC_STATE_x.tpmEstablished field has been successfully executed after the corresponding request TPM_LOC_CTRL_x.resetEstablishment	
				Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt.	
				Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.	
1	Read/ Write 1	cmdReadyInt	Default: 0	A 1 indicates that after a write of 1 to TPM_CTRL_REQ.cmdReady the TPM has successfully finished the transition to the Ready state (i.e. TPM_CRB_CTRL_STS_x.tpmIdle == 0)	
				Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt.	
				Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.	
0	Read/ Write 1	startInt	Default: 0	A 1 indicates that the TPM has executed a command as requested by TPM_CTRL_Start_x = 0001 and the corresponding response is available for read-out (i.e. Start field has been cleared). This interrupt will also be triggered if the currently executed command will be cancelled via a Command Cancel.	
				Writing a 1 to this field clears the interrupt.	
				Writing a 0 to this field has no effect.	

6   TPM Hardware

6.1   FIFO Interface Locality Usage per Register

2790   Table 39 shows how the TPM responds to access to each of the interface registers based on locality settings for the FIFO interface. Table 39 only applies to Localities 0-3. It does not apply to Locality 4.

1. If TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality setting changes when a command is executing, the TPM SHALL abort the currently executing command, as defined in Section
2795   5.5.2.3.1 Command Aborts.

Table 39 — Register Behavior Based on Locality Setting for FIFO

TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality					
Set for this locality		**Set for other locality**		**Not Set**	
READ	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**
TPM_STS_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_INT_ENABLE_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_INT_VECTOR_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_INT_STATUS_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Interrupt cleared	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_ACCESS_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated
TPM_DATA_FIFO_x Registers					
TPM returns correct data	TPM accepts data and command	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write
Configuration registers – 0F00h to 0FFFh					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns correct value	TPM Ignores the write

TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality					
Set for this locality		**Set for other locality**		**Not Set**	
READ	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**
TPM_HASH_START Register					
TPM returns FFh	TPM accepts command	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM accepts (and sets TPM_ACCESS_x .activeLocality for Locality 4)
TPM_HASH_DATA Register					
TPM returns FFh	TPM accepts data	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_HASH_END Register					
TPM returns FFh	TPM accepts command and clears TPM_ACCESS_x .activeLocality for Locality 4	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignores the write

6.2   CRB Interface Locality Usage Per Register

Table 40 shows how the TPM responds to access to each of the interface registers based on locality settings for the CRB interface.

2800   1. If TPM_LOC_STATE_x.activeLocality setting changes when a command is executing, the TPM SHALL abort the currently executing command, as defined in Section 5.5.1.1 Bus Aborts.

Table 40 — Register Behavior Based on Locality Setting for CRB

TPM_ACCESS_x.activeLocality					
Set for this locality		**Set for other locality**		**Not Set**	
READ	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**
TPM_LOC_STATE_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_LOC_CTRL_x Registers					
TPM returns 0	Field updated	TPM returns 0	Field updated	TPM returns 0	Field updated
TPM_LOC_STS_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	Field updated
TPM_CRB_CTRL_x Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignore the write
TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER_x Registers					
TPM returns response data	TPM accepts command or data	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns FFh	TPM Ignore the write
TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.HASH_START Field					
TPM returns 0	TPM accepts (and sets TPM_LOC_STATE_x.activeLocality to Locality 4)	TPM returns 0	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns 0	TPM accepts (and sets TPM_LOC_STATE_x.activeLocality to Locality 4)
TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_DATA Field					
TPM returns 0	TPM consumes data in command buffer	TPM returns 0	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns 0	TPM Ignore the write
TPM_LOC_CTRL_4.TPM_HASH_END Field					
TPM returns 0	TPM finalize and extend data and release Locality	TPM returns 0	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns 0	TPM Ignore the write

2805 ## 6.3   TPM LPC Hardware Protocol

This specification addresses 2.0 compliant TPM's which make use of the LPC bus for connecting to the platform, as there are specific protocol requirements for TPM's using LPC. The definition of specific LPC requirements does not preclude the use of other interfaces on a 2.0 compliant TPM. Future versions of this specification may address
2810 other bus interfaces.

1. If a TPM implements an LPC interface as the method of connecting to the trusted process, it SHALL implement the LPC bus per the requirements of the LPC Interface Specification. A link may be found to the specification in Section 9 References.

2815 2. If a TPM implements an LPC interface, the TPM MAY use the LPC CLKRUN# protocol for mobile platforms.

3. If a TPM implements an LPC interface, the TPM SHALL be designed such that the LPCPD# pin may be strapped high to disable the LPCPD# protocol.

6.3.1   LPC Locality Cycles for TPM Interface

2820 This section only applies to TPM implementations using the LPC interface.

This specification defines two TPM specific LPC cycles, TPM-Write and TPM-Read, which were added for communication between the chipset and the TPM. This was done to prevent simple hardware attacks using a device on the LPC bus that decoded I/O or memory cycles using the previously defined START field. Cycles using the
2825 normal memory read/write or I/O read/write START field to the following ranges are not decoded by the TPM. On the LPC bus, with the exception of the START field, these cycles are identical to I/O cycles. These locality cycles are an additional indication to the TPM (beyond addressing) that the cycles are intended for the TPM as locality commands. These commands can only be generated by a trusted process, e.g. the
2830 chipset.

See Section 5.2.1 TPM Locality Levels for rules and restrictions on using the standard vs. Locality LPC cycles.

By definition, the Locality None level is lower than Locality 0.

1. If the TPM supports Locality None and Locality None is the active locality, any TPM
2835 access request from Locality 0-4 is a higher locality priority. In this case, the TPM SHALL respond to Locality 0-4 register writes to TPM_ACCESS_x.requestUse and TPM_ACCESS_x.Seize per the requirements documented in Section 5.5.2.4 Access Register.

6.3.1.1   TPM-Write LPC Locality Cycle

2840 Table 41 shows the TPM-Write locality cycle format. It is similar to the existing LPC I/O write.

If the CPU attempts to write more than 1 byte at a time to the TPM, the chipset must break this up into multiple cycles of 1 byte each to consecutive addresses.

Table 41 — LPC Locality Cycle TPM-Write for Accessing the TPM

Field	Value for Bits [3:0]	Description
START	0101	Previously this was a reserved value. It is now allocated for TPM-Write and TPM-Read locality cycles.
CYCTYPE + DIR	0010	Same as used for standard LPC I/O Write
ADDR	See Description	Four nibbles. Same as the standard LPC I/O Write.
DATA-Low	DIGEST low nibble	
DATA-High	DIGEST high nibble	
TAR		Standard LPC TAR
SYNC		Standard SYNC field for an I/O Write
TAR		Standard LPC TAR

2845 #### 6.3.1.2 TPM-Read LPC Locality Cycle

Table 42 shows the TPM-Read locality cycle format. It is similar to the existing LPC I/O read.

If the CPU attempts to read more than 1 byte at a time to the TPM, the chipset must break this up into a series of 1-byte reads to consecutive addresses.

2850 **Table 42 — LPC Cycle TPM-Read for Accessing the TPM**

Field	Value for Bits [3:0]	Description
START	0101	Previously this was a reserved value. It is now allocated for TPM-Write and TPM-Read.
CYCTYPE + DIR	0000	Same as used for standard LPC I/O Read
ADDR	See Description	Same as for TPM-Write
TAR		Standard LPC TAR
SYNC	Standard	Standard SYNC field for an I/O Read
DATA-Low	DIGEST low nibble	
DATA-High	DIGEST high nibble	
TAR		Standard LPC TAR

6.4   SPI Hardware Protocol

There were a number of goals that guided architecture of SPI hardware protocol and flow control for the TPM. These assumptions are as follows:

- The TPM must have a dedicated SPI ChipSelect# (CS#).

2855 - Only the chipset is allowed to assert the TPM CS# signal. This means further that the TPM's CS# can only be connected to the south bridge.

- The SPI protocol should not break existing drivers or software.

- The TPM Interface Specification 1.21 defines all registers as having a size of 4 bytes or less. This register size is maintained for compatibility with software. This
2860 applies to the _TPM_Hash_Start/_Data/_End functions, which may be generated by hardware because the TPM's data register is only 4 bytes. No additional registers are defined for registers that might be greater than 4 bytes. Future definitions of software may support 8-byte or 64-byte data registers. The SPI flow

2865

control and protocol are defined to allow for 8-byte and 64-byte data transactions in case they are added later. This allows for future improvements in SPI throughput. An example would be a 64-byte data register at offset 0x80. The 4-byte data register is always implemented and available to software to maintain backwards compatibility.

2870

- Note that the TPM-specific-accesses, TPM-Read and TPM-Write cycles, defined for the LPC bus are not required for SPI.

In the future there may be uses where large amounts of data, for instance 4kB, need to be passed to the TPM.

6.4.1   Clocking

2875

The LPC interface has a free-running clock, but the clock defined by the SPI interface only runs when an SPI transaction occurs. The TPM, to maintain backwards compatibility, is not required to have an external free-running clock. TPM manufacturers may choose to support an external clock in their implementations. The TPM must, however, generate whatever clock source it needs to support internal command processing, as this command processing will likely take place when the SPI

2880

bus is idle and the SPI clock is not running. Additionally, the TPM's timer/tick counter is based on this internal clock and does not require external clock support.

The SPI bus clock frequency may vary based on implementation and/or type of device attached. The TPM default clock frequency for PC Client platforms is defined to be 24MHz, but in future might be higher frequencies.

2885

The SPI bus is a shared-bus architecture. As such, a PC OEM must take care to ensure compatibility between devices on a shared SPI bus. It is likely that there will be BIOS initiated accesses to an SPI ROM containing BIOS code on the same physical bus as an SPI TPM. The PC OEM has two options to deal with this case:

2890

1. The platform and BIOS may be designed to start up at a frequency of 24MHz, as the TPM must support that clock frequency. The BIOS may increase the frequency for transactions to the BIOS ROM at a later point in POST.

2. The platform may be designed with a strap or other hardware method to force operation at a particular frequency, as the PC OEM may select a TPM with support for that particular frequency.

2895

Note 1: The SPI bus may be shared. Therefore when the TPM's CS# is not asserted, the SPI clock may be running at a faster frequency than the TPM supports. Since BIOS knows what TPM is attached to which south bridge, it will need to comprehend the frequency support for both components and will change the SPI clock frequency for the TPM segment while SPI is idle. There is no communication to the TPM of what

2900

the SPI clock frequency is. The frequency can change from command to command, as long as the SPI bus is idle when the frequency changes.

Note 2: TPM's may be used in many types of PC Client platforms. In lower power environments, it is entirely likely that the SPI interface will run at a slower clock frequency, while in high performance environments, the interface will run at a higher frequency. This specification provides a range within which all TPMs will correctly function and allows for TPM vendors to differentiate their parts to allow for a variety of implementations. PC Client systems have multiple standard clock frequencies available which could be used as the source clocks for the SPI interface, such as 14.3MHz, 24MHz, 33MHz, and 66MHz. To enable the widest range of applications, TPM vendors are encouraged to support frequencies between 33MHz and 66MHz in addition to the required clock operating range to allow for higher performance applications.

1. The TPM SHALL support an SPI clock frequency range of 10 - 24 MHz.

2. The TPM MAY support running at lower frequencies.

3. The TPM SHOULD support higher frequencies.

6.4.2   Electrical Specification

The SPI interface does not have an industry standard for electrical characteristics that can be referenced for TPM implementations as was done for LPC. This section describes the normative requirements for the TPM as defined at the TPM pins. This does not describe the requirements for the south bridge.

1. The TPM SHALL support a supply and I/O voltage of 1.8V or 3.3V.

2. The TPM MAY support supply and I/O voltages of both 1.8 and 3.3V.

3. The TPM MAY support other supply and I/O voltages.

4. The TPM SHALL comply with the electrical specifications in the tables below.

Note: For the electrical specifications in Table 45, the timing characteristics are defined only for the specified clock operating range. For other clock frequencies, the timing characteristics are implementation specific.

Table 43 — DC Specifications for 1.8V Supply Voltage

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
Vcc power supply		1.65	1.95	V
VIH	Vcc = 1.65V – 1.95V	0.7 * Vcc	0.3 + Vcc	V
VIL	Vcc = 1.65V – 1.95V	-0.3	0.3 * Vcc	V
VOH	Vcc = 1.65V – 1.95V	0.9 * Vcc		Iout = -100μA
VOL	Vcc = 1.65V – 1.95V		0.1 * Vcc	1.5 mA

Table 44 — DC Specifications for 3.3V Supply Voltage

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
Vcc power supply		3.0	3.6	V
VIH	Vcc= 3.0V – 3.6V	0.7*Vcc	0.5+VCC	V
VIL	Vcc= 3.0V – 3.6V	-0.5V	0.3*VCC	V
VOH	Vcc = 3.0V – 3.60V	0.9 * Vcc		Iout = -100μA
VOL	Vcc = 3.0V – 3.60V		0.1 * Vcc	1.5 mA

2930

Table 45 — AC Electrical Specifications

| Parameter	Description	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
Clock minimum operating range			10	24	MHz
t_{CLKf}	Clock Period	Rising Edge to Rising Edge	$1/f_{CLK}$-5%	$1/f_{CLK}$+5%	ns
t_{CLKr}	Nominal Clock Period	Nominal Clock Period	$1/f_{CLK}$		ns
t_{CLKL}	Clock Low Time	Clock Low Time (see Figure 6)	$0.45t_{CLKr}$	-	ns
t_{CLKH}	Clock High Time	Clock High Time (see Figure 6)	$0.45*t_{CLKr}$	-	ns
$t_{CLKslew}$	Clock Slew Rate	$0.2*V_{CC} - 0.6*V_{CC}$	1	4	V/ns
t_{CS}	CS# High Time	Rising Edge to Falling Edge	50		ns
t_{CSS}	CS# Setup to clock	CS Setup time	5		ns
t_{CSH}	CS# Hold to clock	CS Hold time	5		ns
t_{SU}	MOSI Setup to clock	Data Setup time	2		ns
t_{H}	MOSI Hold to clock	Data Hold time	3		ns
t_{HO}	Clock to MISO valid	Output Hold time	0		ns
t_{vmin}	Output valid from clock falling edge minimum	Output Valid Min	0		ns
t_{Vmax}	Output valid from clock falling edge maximum	Output Valid Max		$0.7* t_{CLKL}$	ns
	TPM SPI Pin Capacitance			10	pF
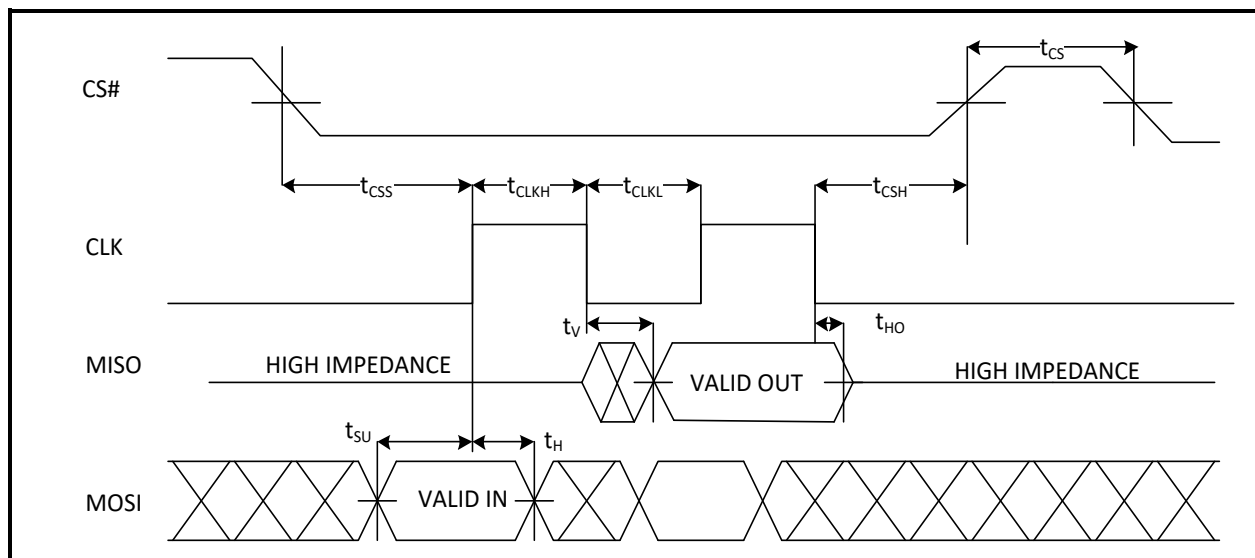
Figure 5 — Timing Diagram
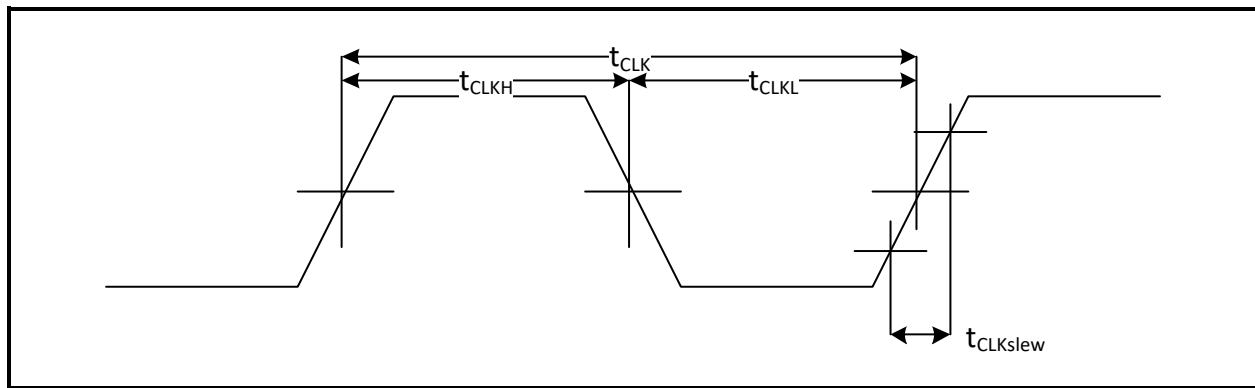
Figure 6 — Clock Timing Diagram

6.4.3   SPI Interrupts

TPMs compliant with the LPC specification support a serial interrupt, SIRQ. The SPI specification does not have an analog to SIRQ. This specification defines a parallel interrupt which functions in a manner similar to a PCI device's INTx#. The implementation of the pin is active low and open collector such that it is sharable. TPMs might continue to support an SIRQ signal to allow for a common design supporting either interface, but they are not required to do so.

1. The TPM SHALL implement a PIRQ# pin.

2. PIRQ# SHALL be active low

3. PIRQ# SHALL be open collector.

4. The PIRQ# pin SHALL be 3.3V tolerant.

5. The TPM MAY implement an SIRQ pin in addition to PIRQ#

6. The TPM MUST NOT implement an internal pull-up resistor on PIRQ#.

6.4.4   Legacy I/O

Previous versions of this specification contained support for legacy I/O cycles and addresses supported by TPM1.1b. For the SPI interface, this version of this specification deprecates all support for legacy accesses to the TPM, including the legacy I/O range. If a TPM vendor chooses to continue to support the LPC interface, they may continue to support Legacy addressing on the LPC interface only. It is expected that south bridges supporting SPI as defined in this specification will block any I/O cycles to TPMs connected via an SPI bus. This will be enforced in hardware. TPMs compliant with this specification do not need to implement the legacy IOW/IOR access mechanism. The south bridge will route the entire address range from 0xFED4_0000 through 0xFED4_4FFF to the TPM over SPI. This allows the TPM to add new registers and maintain compatibility with the southbridge.

6.4.5   Flow Control

The SPI interface does not define a flow control mechanism. The TPM, as defined, requires flow control to allow for varying sized data transfers.

This specification defines a method of flow control that operates on a transaction basis. On the LPC interface, transfers occur on a byte by byte basis, regardless of the transaction size. On SPI, transfers may occur in 4-, 8-, 32- or 64-byte chunks.

The method of flow control specified in this section allows the TPM to insert a wait state to hold off the transfer. Additionally, each transaction will provide, as part of the packet preceding the address, a transaction size. This allows a TPM vendor to implement more advanced mechanisms of flow control. For example, if the south bridge initiates a write of 32 bytes to the TPM_XData_FIFO or the TPM_CRB_DATA_BUFFER, the TPM can read the size of the transfer and, if it does not have 32 bytes of open space in its buffer, it would insert a wait state. Alternatively, the TPM could accept the transaction if it had a 64-byte buffer with only 8 bytes of data present. The TPM vendor isn't required to verify transaction sizes before resorting to the flow control mechanism specified here. The TPM may choose to ignore the flow control method and choose to insert wait states, as defined here, if their buffer is not currently empty. This will have a performance impact on larger transaction sizes, but should pose no issue with 4-byte or 8-byte transfers. Byte level flow control was not considered, as the overhead of allowing flow control between each byte is too high with almost no benefit.

To allow flexibility for larger size transactions in the future, south bridges are likely to have limited, if any, HW checking on the size of accesses to the TPM address space. If the south bridge receives a transaction for any size from 1 byte to 64 bytes that doesn't cross a 64-byte boundary, it may choose to accept and issue that transaction to the TPM on SPI as received. The TPM, if it doesn't insert a wait state at the designated point must accept the transaction, as long as it doesn't cross a register boundary. If the transaction crosses a register boundary, the TPM may choose to accept all of the data and discard the data that exceeds the size limit for that register as long as doing so does not cause a change to the state of any adjacent register. The flow control specified in this specification defines a transaction structure for SPI consisting of 1 byte of command (including direction of transfer and transaction size), 3B of address, followed by the transaction data (either write data from the south bridge to the TPM or read data from the TPM to the south bridge). The TPM may insert wait states following receipt of the address. The south bridge will monitor the MISO line on the rising edge of the clock in the window following transmission of the last bit of the address. The TPM, in order to insert a wait state, drives the MISO line low (0) on the falling edge of the previous clock (clock in which the last bit of address is driven by the south bridge). The TPM would continue to drive MISO line in 8-bit increments until it is ready to receive or transmit data. The south bridge polls the MISO line every 8 clocks until it sees a 1, then it either starts to transmit data or expects to receive data on the next falling clock edge.

Note: For the purposes of defining the flow control, on SPI the MOSI or MISO signal is driven by the owner on the clock's falling edge, and captured by the receiver on the clock's rising edge.

For a read, the command and address are driven on MOSI and the TPM responds with data on MISO. With no wait states, the TPM would drive data on the next falling clock edge following receipt of the last address bit on the rising edge of the clock. This is illustrated in Figure 7 below. The SB monitors the MISO pin in the same clock window that A[0] (the last address bit) is valid. If MISO is captured high on the rising edge of the clock, then the SB will continue to write or read data on the following clock edges. This aligns with standard SPI protocol where there are no wait states. In Figure 7 — Example Read transaction with a WAIT state and Figure 8, if the TPM drives a 1 in the A[0] window, or in any subsequent wait state window, then MISO is no longer used for wait states, in which case MISO is either providing valid data for reads or is a don't care for writes.

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 137
May 22, 2017

There is no further flow control allowed. Once the data starts coming from the TPM, it must provide the entire transaction's worth of data, which can be from 1 to 64 bytes, depending on the TPM's supported transaction size. In this example, if the south bridge had latched a 1 on the rising clock in the wait state window, then it would start latching in data starting on the next rising edge, which is the normal behavior without wait states. The TPM may insert any number of wait states that it needs.

Since the wait state is defined as 0 on MISO, if there is no TPM present at all, then the SPI interface design has a weak pull-up on MISO. If a TPM is not present, a pull-up on MISO means that the SB controller sees a 1, and will latch in 0xFF on the read. This follows standard master abort behavior of 0xFF for read data and matches the behavior when the TPM was on LPC.

For writes, the mechanism is similar. If MISO is 0 to request a wait state, then the data driven during that byte is not valid and the TPM will drop the data. If there is a wait state, the master will drive the first byte of the transaction until the slave stops requesting wait states. The SB will sample MISO on the last data bit of the byte (multiples of 8 clocks after the first wait state window). Again, the TPM must hold MISO as 0 for 8 clocks each time it requests a wait state. If MISO is 1, this indicates the TPM is ready for the entire write, accepts the first byte which the SB has sent in the same clock, and the SB will then drive the 2nd and subsequent bytes on the following clocks. Once the data starts transmitting, the entire write data will be sent with no further flow control. See Figure 8 — Example of WRITE transaction with Wait state for an example of a write transaction with wait states inserted.

Wait states are byte based. For reads where MISO is used to return data to the master, the SB will start sampling at byte[-1], which is the window when A[7:0] is transmitted. If the last bit of this window is 0, then the TPM is requesting a wait state and the SB continues reading MISO for 8 clocks (a byte's worth) and will look at the last bit to determine if there should be another wait state or not. From the SB standpoint, it is simply reading a byte and processing it as a byte. The last bit of that byte determines what to do next. If the bit is 1, then the SB knows to start sending the valid data on writes, or receiving data for reads. One option on writes is to send data byte 0 over and over until there is no wait state, and then move to byte 1, etc. For reads, each byte can be sampled, and when the last bit is 1, start moving the next byte into the data buffer and increment the byte count received.

Note: The TPM interface was architected knowing that some of the actual command processing could take seconds to complete. Therefore registers were provided that SW can poll on to determine when it should read the actual results of the command. Software should never attempt to read the DATA FIFO without verifying that the TPM_STS_x.commandReady and TPM_STS_x.dataAvail fields are set. If software does, the TPM will return FF's as described in Section 5.5.1.1 <u>Bus Aborts</u>. For writes, the TPM is required to insert wait states if software attempts to write data without waiting for the TPM to transition to the Ready state. The HW will allow flow control until the TPM is ready to provide the data, which could be as long as the applicable timeout. On the other hand the registers used for the SW control must not have excessively long delays or the system performance would be impacted. There are some registers for which wait states would present a problem in the overall operation of the system. The TPM is only allowed 1 wait state to decode the address before returning the contents of the register. The FIFO registers with this restriction are:

- ACCESS (0x0), once the requirements defined in Section 6.6 <u>Reset Timing</u> are satisfied

3065 • INT_ENABLE (0x8)

• INT_VECTOR (0xC)

• INT_STATUS (0x10)

• INTF_CAPABILITY (0x14)

• STS (0x18), after the register contains a valid logical level as defined in Section
3070   5.5.2.5 <u>Status Register</u>

• HASH_START (0x20)

• DID_VID (0xF00)

• RID (0xF04)

There are no CRB registers with this restriction.

3075 **Note:** when inserting wait states on the bus, if that SPI segment is used by other devices, then they will be stalled until the TPM completes the transaction. Adding wait states slows down the system, so should be used sparingly.

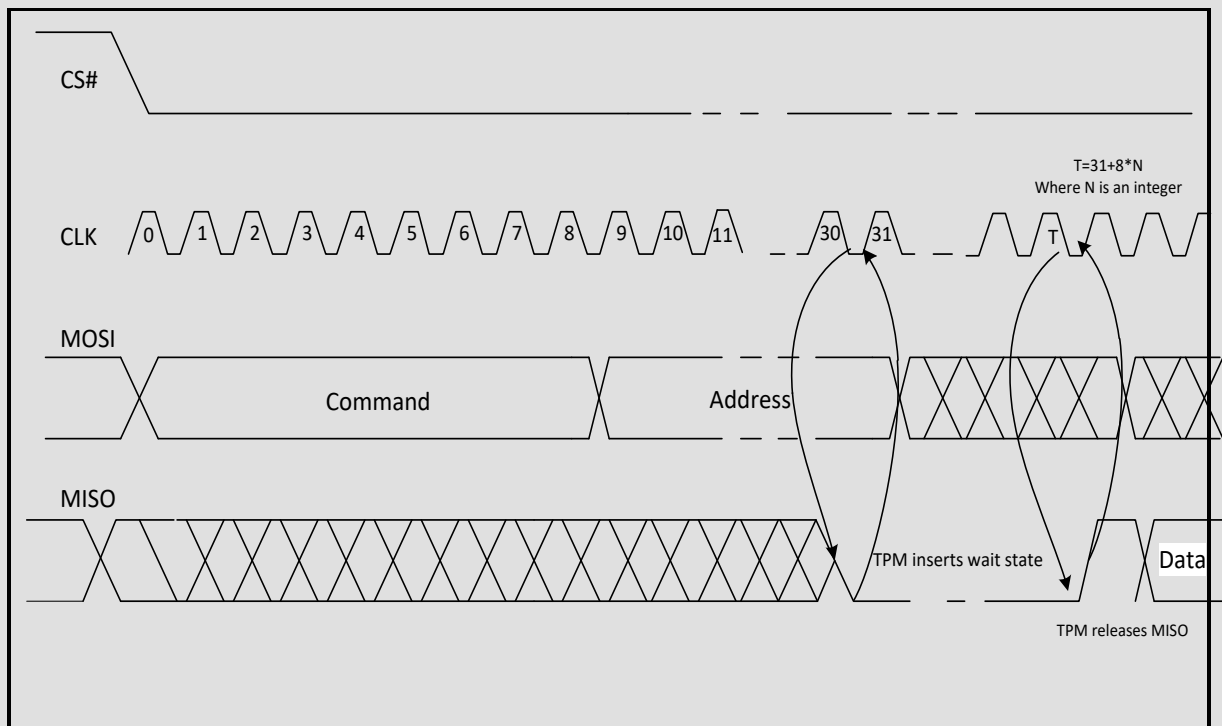Example of a read and write transaction with WAIT state are shown below.

3080   **Figure 7 — Example Read transaction with a WAIT state**
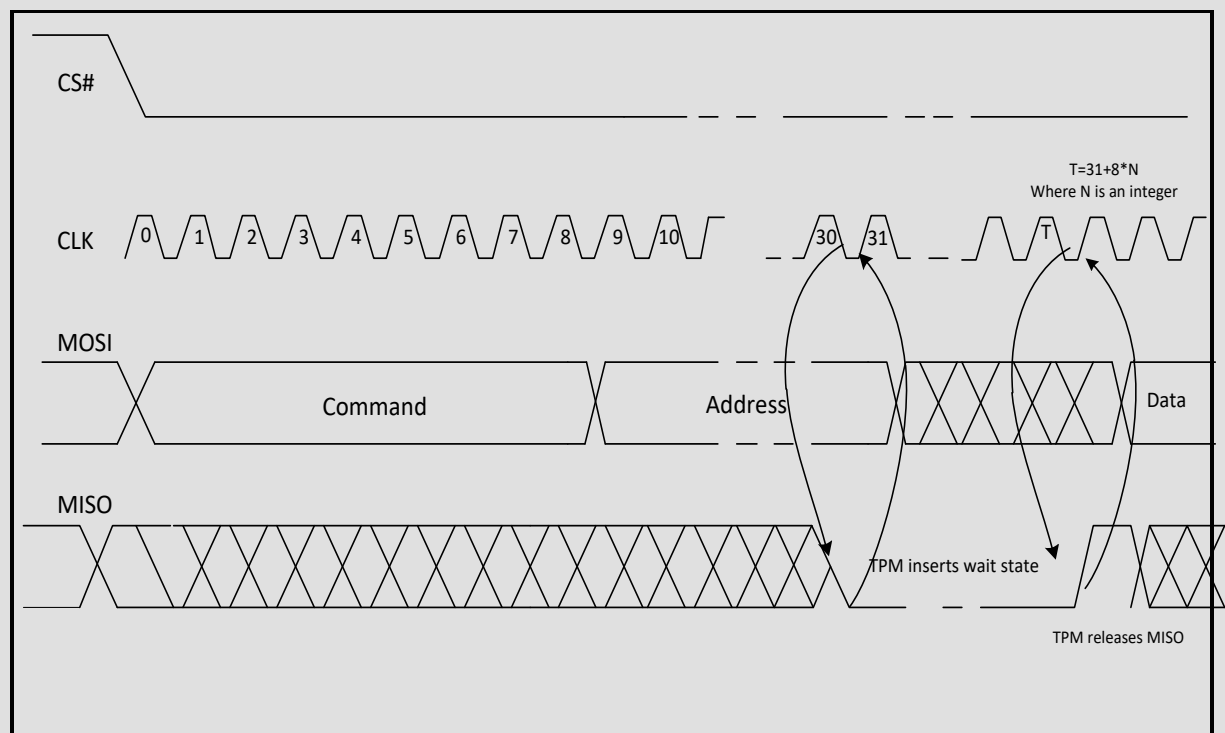
Figure 8 — Example of WRITE transaction with Wait state

1. The wait state window is defined to start on the rising edge of the clock on the transmission of the last bit of address to the rising edge of the subsequent clock.

3085 2. The wait state window repeats every 8 clocks in the same transaction until the TPM no longer inserts wait states.

3. The TPM SHALL drive MISO low (0) on the falling edge of the clock in the wait state window to signal insertion of a wait state.

4. The TPM SHALL continue to drive MISO low (0) on the falling edge of the clock in
3090 subsequent wait state windows for the same transaction until it is ready to receive (Read) or transmit (Write) all of the data for that transaction.

5. The TPM SHALL drive MISO high (1) on the falling edge of the clock in the wait state window to signal no further wait states will be inserted.

6. The TPM SHALL drive MISO high (1) on the falling edge of the clock in the first wait
3095 state window if it does not intend to insert a wait state.

7. The TPM SHALL NOT insert more than 1 wait state on a Read cycle to the following registers:

   a. TPM_ACCESS_x, once the requirements defined in Section 6.6 <u>Reset Timing</u> are satisfied

3100 b. TPM_STS_x, after the register contains a valid logical level as defined in Section 5.5.2.5 <u>Status Register</u>

   c. TPM_INTF_CAPABILITY

   d. TPM_INT_ENABLE

   e. TPM_INT_STATUS

3105   f. TPM_INT_VECTOR

          g. TPM_DID

          h. TPM_VID

      8.   The TPM MAY insert wait states for accesses to the TPM_HASH_x register, but
           SHALL NOT exceed TIMEOUT_B.

3110 **6.4.6   SPI Bit Protocol**

      The bit protocol defined in this section provides for transactions to follow the following
      rules:

      - Data is transferred most significant bit (msb) first, least significant byte (LSB) first

      - Address and command are transferred msb first for the entire field, e.g. the 24-bit
3115   address is transferred by sending A23 first, then A22 all the way to A0.

      - Master and slave both drive data on the falling edge of the SPI clock.

      - Master and slave both sample data on the rising edge of the SPI clock.

      - The address presented to the TPM on the SPI bus will always be a 24-bit address
        that is offset from 0xFE. The chipset will decide the full address and if the cycle is
3120   in the 0xFED4_xxxx range, it will assert the TPM's CS# pin.

      - Only SPI mode 0 is supported (CPHA=0, CPOL=0).

      The bit order defined below is transmitted on the wire starting from the bottom of the
      table, ending with the top of the table. The first bit in the protocol is the read/write
      bit, allowing the TPM to determine what type of transaction follows. The last bit is the
3125 least significant bit (lsb) of the most significant byte (MSB) of the data packet. As
      described in Section 6.4.5 Flow Control, it is legal to transmit any number of bytes of
      data from 1 byte to 64 bytes. Zero-length transactions are not supported or allowed.

      There is no status byte built into the protocol.   The existing methods using
      TPM_STS_x.burstCount and TPM_STS_x.Expect govern transfer failures, as defined in
3130 Section 5.5.2.5 Status Register. If the TPM has not received all of the bytes of the
      transaction, it will set TPM_STS_x.Expect to a 1, to signal to the chipset that it still
      expects data. On a read, if the chipset does not receive the required number of bytes
      (or any bytes), the chipset may issue a retry, or it may send all FF's to the driver,
      signaling a failure.

3135 The SPI interface has evolved to support double data rate transactions. The TPM does
      not support double data rate transfers.

      1. The TPM SHALL support the bit protocol defined in Table 46.

      2. The TPM SHALL drive read data on the falling edge of the clock

      3. The TPM SHALL sample write data on the rising edge of the clock.

3140 4. The TPM SHALL decode transactions sent to offset 0xD4_xxxx when its CS# is
         asserted.

Table 46 — SPI Bit Protocol

Bit Transfer Order on MISO/MOSI	BYTE on MISO/MOSI	Usage	Notes
	67 for 64B xactions 11 for 8B xactions	future use for larger register sizes	
57-63 – last bits on wire	7	Data[30:24]	
56		Data[31]	msb of 4th LSB
49-55	6	Data[22:16]	
48		Data[23]	msb of 3rd LSB
41-47	5	Data[14:8]	
40		Data[15]	msb of 2nd LSB
33-39	4	Data[6:0]	
32		Data[7]	msb of LSB
Optional flow control can be done in this window. See the Flow Control section for details. This is the only place in the bit xfers where flow control can be done.			
31	3	Addr[0]	lsb of address
9-30	1-3	Addr[22] down to Addr[1]	
8	1	Addr[23]	msb of address
2-7	0	bits[5:0] Size of xfer where bit[5] of this field is the 3rd bit transferred on the wire, and bit [0] is the 8th bit on the wire. This field is 0's based count of the bytes. Any byte count from 1 to 64 is legal.	Bit [5:0] decode '11_1111' = 64 bytes ' etc. for 63 down to 6 bytes '00_0100' = 5 bytes '00_0011' = 4 bytes '00_0010' = 3 bytes '00_0001' = 2 bytes '00_0000' = 1 byte
1		rsvd; bit[6]	
0 – first bit on wire		Byte0, bit[7] Read/Write	1=read, 0 = write

6.5 TPM Byte Ordering

The TPM Interface Specification contains definitions for TPM registers which have
3145 multi-byte address ranges. Data transmitted on the interface to these registers is
transferred from the lowest address or least significant byte (LSB at byte offset 0) to
the highest address or most significant byte. For more information on the addressing
and address decode of these registers, see Sections 5.3 TPM Register Space, 5.5.2.5
Status Register, and 5.5.2.6 Data FIFO Register.

3150 The TPM Library Specification defines command structures which have multi-byte
fields, which are defined as follows: Integer values are expressed as an array of one or
more bytes. The byte at offset zero within the array is the most significant byte of the
integer, referred to within this section as big-endian. For example, a field designation
of UINT-32 is a byte array of 4 bytes with the most significant byte at byte offset 0.
3155 These commands are transmitted on the TPM interface as the payload of a TPM
register access.

The TPM Interface does not ensure or validate the byte ordering of the payload. It is the responsibility of the TPM software, typically the TPM driver in conjunction with the TSS, to correctly marshal the command payload for any write to a TPM register.

3160   To write to a multi-byte register, e.g. the TPM_DATA_FIFO, the TPM must receive the least significant byte first, as defined in Section 5.3.1 TPM Register Space Decode. The payload of that transfer will contain the command, which may include multi-byte arrays, having their MSB at offset 0.

The driver is required to handle the byte ordering of TPM command fields vs. the byte
3165   ordering of the TPM registers, LPC bridge and LPC bus. Software may do Double Word (DW) (4 bytes) or Word (2 bytes) or Byte accesses to the TPM. Standard PC platforms will have bridges that translate these 4-byte or 2-byte accesses into single-byte accesses on LPC. PC platforms will always break up the request so that they send the least significant address of that request first on the LPC bus.

3170   As an example, the TPM data structure TPM_PROTOCOL_ID is defined in the TPM Library Specification as having a value of 0x0005 for PID_OWNER, where 0x00 is the MSB in the array. To ensure the TPM receives the correct command payload, this structure must be sent to the TPM with 0x00 as the first byte and 0x05 as the second byte. However, the bridge between the CPU and the TPM sends the LSB first and
3175   therefore, a CPU write of 0x0005 would send the 0x05 to the TPM first, then the 0x00 which is not the correct sequence for the TCG_PROTOCOL_ID for PID_OWNER. The driver could perform two 1-byte accesses to the TPM, the first write would be with data 0x00, and the second write would be with data 0x05. Or software could do a Word access and send 0x0500, which would result in the bridge issuing the 0x00 cycle first
3180   on the LPC bus followed by an LPC cycle of 0x05.

6.6   Reset Timing

The operation of the platform's CRTM likely occurs during a very time-sensitive period. Because of this, strict requirements are necessary for the TPM's reset timing. During this time, the platform's CRTM may need to make decisions based on the presence or
3185   absence of the TPM's response that affect the rest of the platform's boot cycle. This requires that any return from TPM_ACCESS_x register be valid regardless of the timing – the TPM must not be allowed to return anything but a valid response from this register.

While the TPM_ACCESS_x register is the most critical, the availability of the other
3190   registers is important for performance reasons.

This section contains the timing requirements for the TPM's registers. The normative requirements describing the relationship between the individual fields within a register are contained in Sections 5.5.2.4 Access Register, 5.5.2.5 Status Register, and 5.5.3 CRB Interface Requirements.

3195   1. Within 500 microseconds of the completion of _TPM_INIT:

   a. For FIFO interface, all fields within all TPM_ACCESS_x registers SHALL be a valid logical level as indicated by the tpmRegValidSts field being set to a 0 or a1.

   b. For CRB interface, all fields within TPM_LOC_STATE_X register SHALL be a valid logical level as indicated by the tpmRegValidSts field being set to a 0 or a
3200   1.

2. Within 30 milliseconds of the completion of _TPM_INIT:

    a. For FIFO interface, all fields within the access register and all other registers SHALL return with the state of all their fields valid (i.e. TPM_ACCESS_x.tpmRegValidSts is set to 1).

3205   b. For CRB interface, all fields within the TPM_LOC_STATE_X, TPM_LOC_CTRL_X, TPM_LOC_STS_X, and TPM_CRB_INTF_ID_X shall be valid.

    c. The TPM SHALL be ready to receive a command.

7 I2C Interface Definition

3210 This section defines the registers and hardware protocol for a PC Client TPM implemented with an I2C interface. The register definition is different from a FIFO or CRB interface as the I2C addressing scheme prevents 1:1 mapping of addresses. If a TPM vendor implements I2C, the requirements in this section are needed to comply with this specification.

7.1 TPM I2C Interface Requirements

3215 ### 7.1.1 Requirements

7.1.2 Bus speed

The speed of the data transfers is influenced by the participating components as well as by the clock frequency used. I2C provides options for several bus speeds, standard mode (Sm, up to 100 kbit/s), fast mode (Fm, up to 400 kbit/s), fast mode plus (Fm+,
3220 up to 1 Mbit/s), high speed mode (Hs-mode, up to 3.4 Mbit/s) and ultra-fast mode (UFm, up to 5 Mbit/s). To allow a wide usage without enhanced HW features, standard mode and fast mode are a good choice with suitable data transfer rates. As fast mode devices can communicate with standard mode devices, fast mode has been chosen.

1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL be able to operate at Fast mode
3225 (Fm).

2. Higher speeds are allowed and SHALL be indicated via the Interface Capability register (see section 7.3.5.10 of this document).

7.1.3 I2C Device address

Each device on the I2C bus needs a unique slave address. I2C offers 2 options, 7-bit
3230 slave address is mandatory and 10-bit slave address is optional. Because 10-bit addressing requires 2 bytes of overhead, 7-bit addressing (1 byte overhead) has been chosen to keep the overhead small.

The default 7-bit I2C device address is 0x2E, the 8th bit indicates the data direction. Therefore the first byte after the START condition will be 0x5D for an I2C read request
3235 and 0x5C for an I2C write transmission.

1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL support one 7-bit I2C device address.

2. Default address is 0x2E.

3. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification MAY support reconfiguration of the I2C
3240 device address.

   a. If supported the reconfiguration SHOULD follow the mechanism defined in section 7.3.5.15 of this document.

   b. An I2C-TPM MAY implement a vendor defined mechanism for the reconfiguration of the I2C device address.

3245 7.1.4   Fast turnaround

I2C offers 2 options for write / read cycles, one is to have 2 separate frames for write and read, and the other is to combine 2 frames using the repeated start condition. The 2nd option allows a slightly higher throughput. Additionally, the repeated start mechanism avoids an allocation of the bus by any other device.

3250   1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHOULD support the repeated start condition (Sr) for I2C read after I2C write.

7.1.5   Data rate synchronization

I2C is a synchronous bus and the operating speed of the I2C-TPM may sometimes require that the communication speed of the master is throttled down so that the I2C-

3255   TPM has sufficient time to store data or to provide correct response data. To allow the synchronization between the I2C-TPM and the bus master it is required that the bus master supports the clock stretching mechanism.

1. If an I2C-TPM needs to synchronize the data rate on the bus it SHALL use clock stretching.

3260 7.1.6   Supply voltage

Besides the supply voltages required by this specification the I2C-TPM may also support other supply voltages.

1. The I2C-TPM SHALL support a supply and I/O voltage of 1.8V or 3.3V.

2. The I2C-TPM MAY support supply and I/O voltages of both 1.8 and 3.3V.

3265   3. The I2C-TPM MAY support other supply and I/O voltages.

7.1.7   Pull-up resistors

I2C needs pull-up resistors to allow the implementation of the wired-AND function. As I2C is critical with respect to the rise time of the bus signals the configuration of the pull-up resistors depends mainly on the bus length and on the number of devices

3270   connected to the bus. To allow sufficient flexibility regarding the configuration of the pull-up resistors, external resistors will be implemented on the platform.

1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL NOT have internal pull-up resistors on the SDA and SCL pins.

7.1.8   Host interrupt

3275   An I2C-TPM may need a considerable time to process certain requests especially for commands with cryptographic operations. Polling the I2C-TPM during command processing for response availability would create a certain bus load on the one hand and would also create a high system load. Therefore it is better that the I2C-TPM informs the host once the command processing has been finished and the response is

3280   available. Furthermore, for some other events the host may desire notification regarding such events via an interrupt mechanism rather than polling for such an event.

1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL support a host interrupt (PIRQ#) for signaling of certain events (e.g. response availability).

Page 146
May 22, 2017

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

3285 ### 7.1.9   Availability after reset

At power-on after reset the I2C-TPM needs some time to perform the initialization of the device and the initial self-test. Therefore it is necessary to allow the I2C-TPM a certain amount of time to perform such operations before it is able to handle communication requests.

3290 1. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL be available for communication within 30ms after de-assertion of reset (aka TPM_Init).

7.1.10 Locality support

With TPM 1.2 the so-called Locality concept was introduced as hardware based authorization. As TPM 2.0 continues to support Locality, it is also included in the TPM
3295 I2C Interface. To allow simplified implementations it is possible to implement an I2C-TPM with only one locality.

The indication of which localities are supported is done via the Interface Capability register (see section 7.3.5.10 of this document).

2. An I2C-TPM compliant to this specification SHALL support one of the following
3300   options:

   a. one locality (locality 0) or

   b. 5 localities (locality 0 – locality 4) or

   c. All localities supported by this specification (locality 0 – locality 255).

7.1.11 GUARD_TIME

3305 GUARD_TIME is the minimum elapsed time at the I2C master measured from the I2C STOP condition until the next I2C START condition. GUARD_TIME might be required by some I2C TPM implementations to recover between 2 separate access cycles.

The Interface Capability register (see section 7.3.5.10 of this document) indicates whether an I2C-TPM needs the GUARD_TIME and for which condition (write after
3310 read, write after write, read after write or read after read).

The default value for GUARD_TIME for all 4 conditions is 250 µs. This value has to be assumed until the actual value indicated by the I2C-TPM has been read from the corresponding fields in the Interface Capability register. Additionally, before the actual value for GUARD_TIME_Sr has been read from the Interface Capability register, the
3315 bus master has to use the default value of 250 µs for GUARD_TIME_Sr.

7.2   Communication Protocol Fundamentals

Data transmission between the I2C-TPM and the HOST is done through the I2C interface of the I2C-TPM. Additionally, the I2C-TPM offers an indication that response
3320 data is available through a dedicated pin (PIRQ#). This low-active signal can also be used as an interrupt signal for other events as defined in section 7.3.5.5 of this document.

The communication flow between the HOST and the I2C-TPM is a strong dialog. That means the HOST has to wait after a request for the corresponding response from the
3325 I2C-TPM before sending a new request.
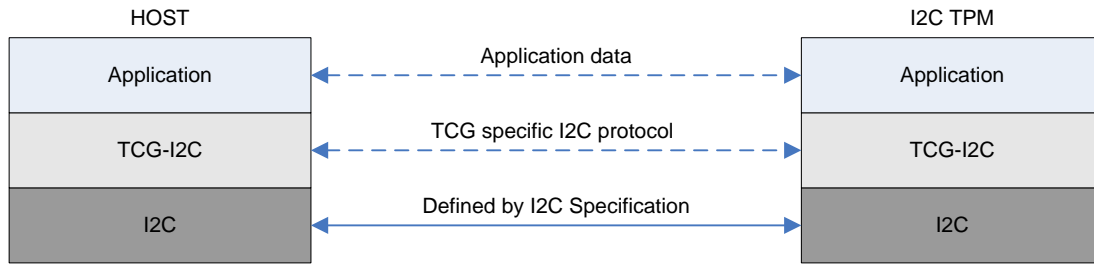
7.2.1   Layer Model

Figure 9 Layer Model

3330   ### 7.2.2   Physical Layer I2C

The standardized physical layer is entirely defined in the I2C specification (8). Only a subset of those definitions is used for this protocol. See section 7.1 of this document for details.

7.2.2.1   I2C Protocol Usage Scenarios

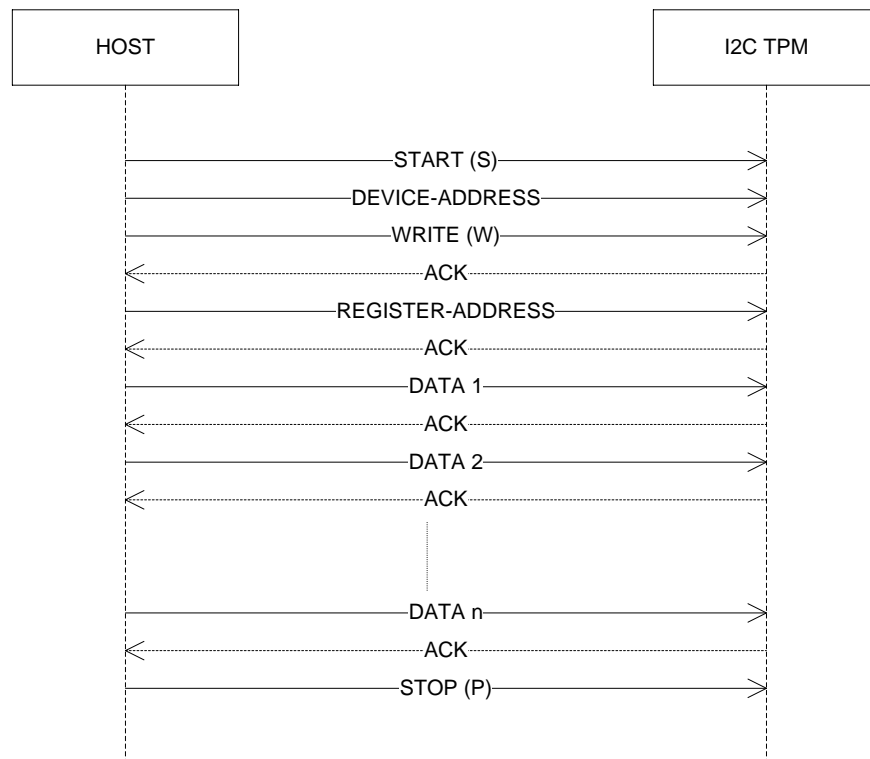3335   #### 7.2.2.1.1   Regular Register write

Figure 10 — Register write sequence on the I2C layer

7.2.2.1.2 Register write with address NACK

3340 An address NACK is returned by the I2C-TPM when either an invalid I2C device address is used by the bus master or the I2C-TPM is currently unable to respond to the current bus cycle because of internal reasons. It is a good practice to repeat the current cycle using the correct I2C device address.

3345
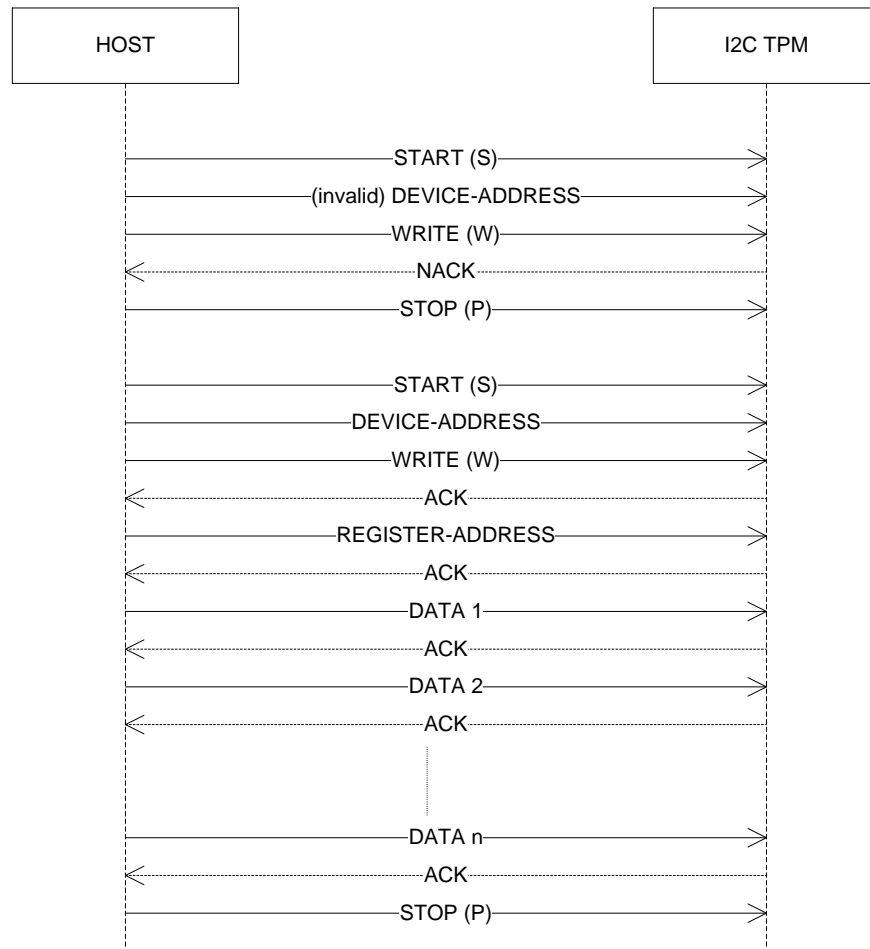
Figure 11 — Register write sequence with address NACK on the I2C layer

7.2.2.1.3 Register write with data NACK

A data NACK is returned by the I2C-TPM when it is unable to receive any more data 3350 bytes. It is a good practice to repeat the current cycle entirely if this happens.
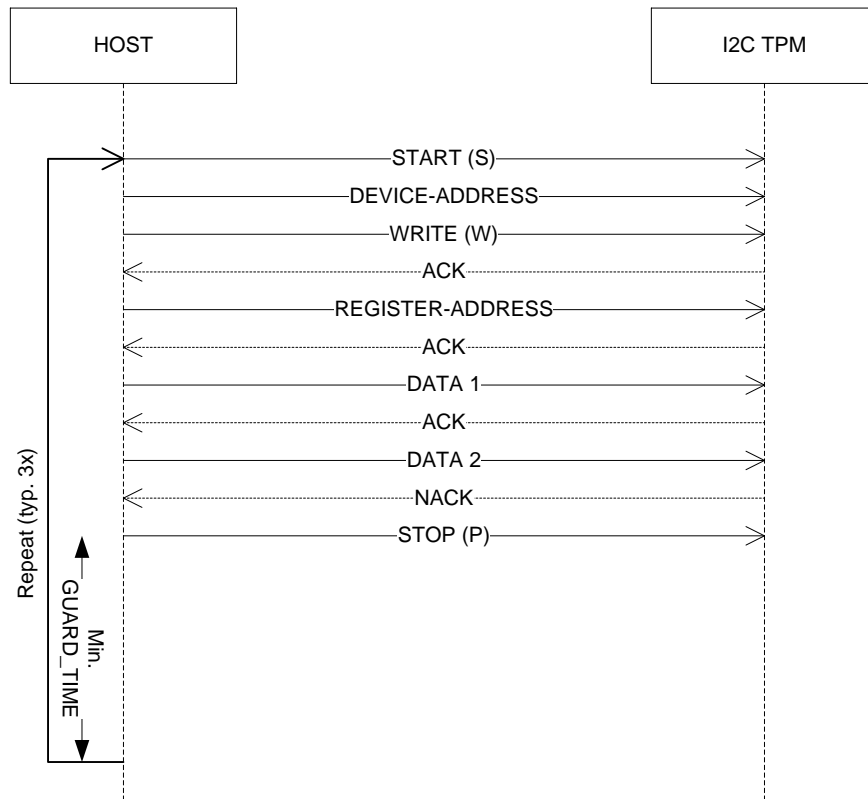
Figure 12 — Register write sequence with data NACK on the I2C layer

1. If the I2C-TPM must return a NACK during the reception of data it SHALL discard
3355   the data already written during this cycle.

7.2.2.1.4 Regular Register read
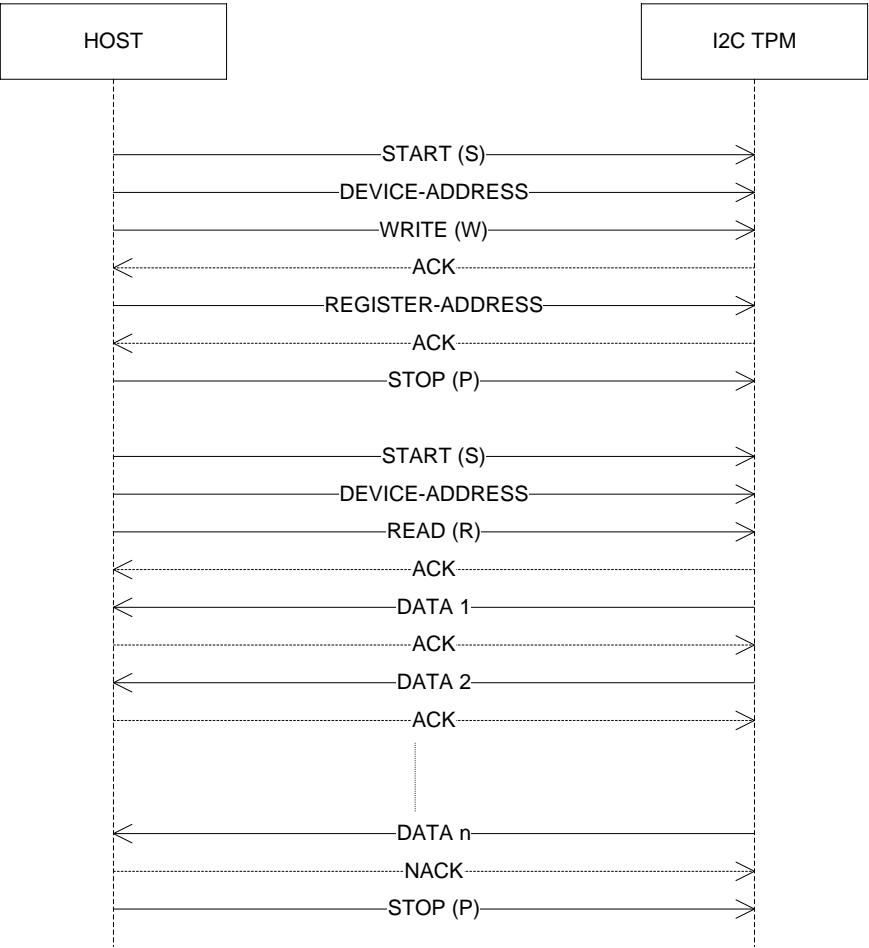
3360   Figure 13 — Register read sequence on the I2C layer

7.2.2.1.5 Register read with repeated START
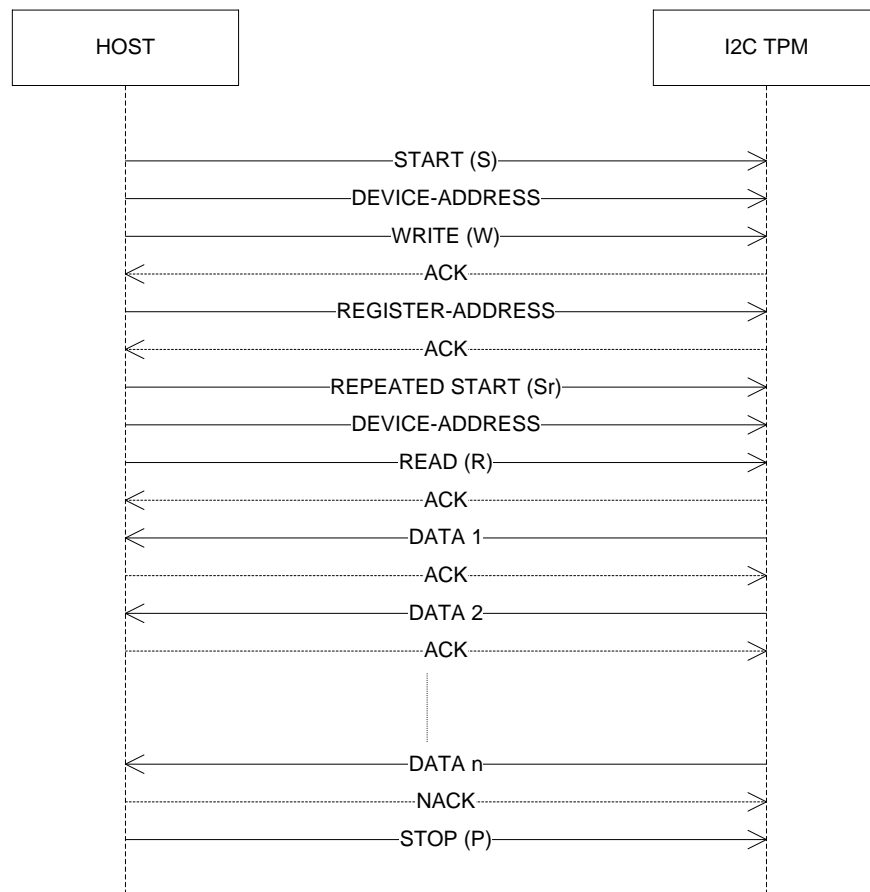
3365   **Figure 14 -** Register read sequence on the I2C layer using repeated START (Sr)

7.2.2.1.6 **Register read with GUARD_TIME**
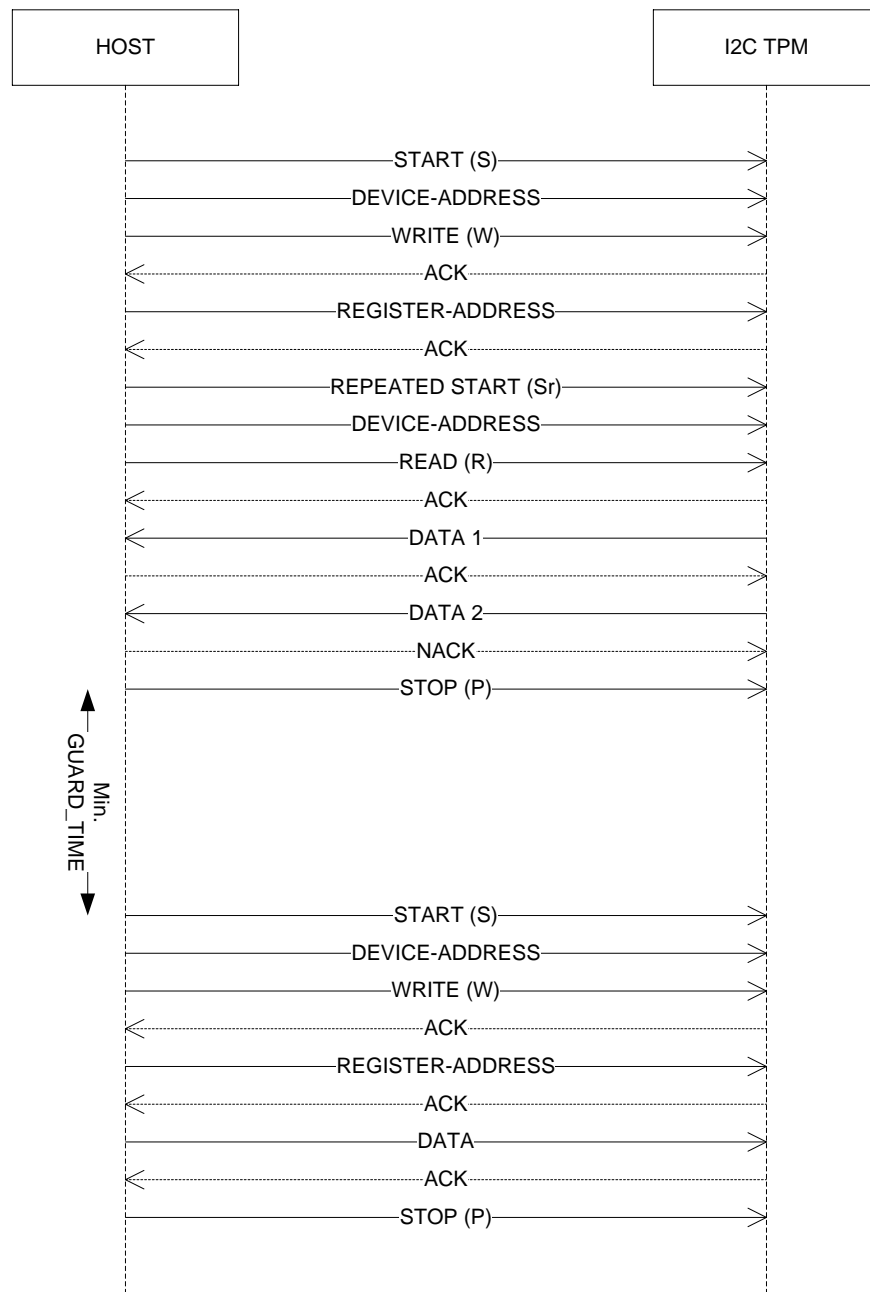
Figure 15 — Register read sequence with GUARD_TIME write after read on the I2C
layer

7.3   **Physical Layer TCG-I2C**

The physical layer TCG-I2C is used to establish several sub-addresses below a single
3375   I2C device address as defined by the I2C specification [8]. These sub-addresses are
defined as shown in the following sections of this document. The I2C slave uses
different address locations for status, control and data communication registers.

7.3.1   Byte Ordering

Multi-byte numeric values are stored and sent via the bus in little-endian order; for example, the first byte of a two-byte register is the LSB of the stored value while the second byte is its MSB. For example, if ,the master wants to read from a 4-byte register at 0x08 containing data0 at 0x08, data1 at 0x09, data2 at 0x0A and data3 at 0x0B the byte order on the bus looks as follows:

Register-Address:							0x08	0x09	0x0A	0x0B	
I2C:	S	DEVICE_ ADDRESS	W	REGISTER_ ADDRESS	Sr	DEVICE_ ADDRESS	R	Data0	Data1	Data2	Data3	P

7.3.2   Overruns

1. The I2C-TPM SHALL return a value of 0xFF in the following cases

    a. On a read from an invalid register

    b. On a read beyond the end of a register

2. If the master writes beyond the end of a register:

    a. The I2C-TPM SHALL update the register designated by the start address.

    b. The I2C-TPM MAY update additional, adjacent registers.

7.3.3   Handling of Multi-Byte Registers

The I2C-TPM has various multi-byte registers (e.g. TPM_INT_ENABLE). Such registers are defined by a base address and a length. In all cases, except for the TPM_STS register, the access to such multi-byte registers is only possible from the register base address. E.g. a write to the TPM_INT_ENABLE starts from base address 0x08 and consists of 4 bytes. A read from the same register also starts at the base address but may consist of 1 to 4 bytes (e.g. a read from 0x08 with only 1 byte would return bits 0 to 7 while a read from 0x09 may return 0xFF).

There is one exception concerning TPM_STS, which is divided into 3 parts. The 1st part with one byte at 0x18 (bits 0 to 7) may be written as a single byte. The 2nd part with two bytes at 0x19 is read only but may be written without effect (the write is ignored by the I2C-TPM). The 3rd part with one byte at 0x1B (bits 24 to 31) may also be written as a single byte. Consequently, a write to 0x18 may consist of 1 to 4 bytes. The same applies for a read, e.g. a read from 0x18 with 1 byte returns bits 0 to 7, a read from 0x18 with 4 bytes returns the entire TPM_STS register and a read from 0x1B with one byte returns bits 24 to 31.

1. The I2C-TPM SHALL accept a write to a register base address with a data length = length of the addressed register.

2. The I2C-TPM SHALL accept a read from a register base address and return the corresponding values under consideration of the rules in Table 53.

3. The I2C-TPM SHALL accept a single byte write to the addresses 0x18 or 0x1B (TPM_STS) and change the corresponding value.

4. The I2C-TPM SHALL accept a single byte read from the address 0x1B (TPM_STS) and return the corresponding value.

Page 154
May 22, 2017

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

5. The I2C-TPM SHALL accept a 2-byte read from address 0x19 (TPM_STS) and return the corresponding values.

6. The behavior of the I2C-TPM for any other access is vendor specific.

3420

7.3.4   I2C-TPM Localities

The I2C-TPM supports all localities as defined in Section 5.2 including the extended localities as defined in the TPM 2.0 Library Specification. Which locality currently
3425   accesses the I2C-TPM can be determined from the value in the locality selection register. Locality priority determines which locality takes precedence in cases where two or more localities request the I2C-TPM simultaneously. Table 47 shows the locality priorities with 1 as the highest priority and 6 as the lowest.

3430   **Table 47 — TPM Locality Selection Register**

Locality Priority	Locality Selection Register value	Locality	Value of locality modifier (see Section 5.2.1)	Mandatory (M) Optional (O)
5	0x00	0	0000 0001b	M
4	0x01	1	0000 0010b	O
3	0x02	2	0000 0100b	O
2	0x03	3	0000 1000b	O
1	0x04	4	0001 0000b	O
6	0x05 – 0x1F	Reserved for vendor use	n.a.	n.a.
	0x20 – 0xFF	32 - 255	0010 0000b – 1111 1111b	O

7.3.5   I2C-TPM Registers

The I2C-TPM registers are used to map the FIFO Interface for TPM 2.0 (see Section 5.5.2) to TPM 2.0 implementations using I2C as the Host interface. Those registers are
3435   established as sub-addresses below the single I2C device address as defined by the I2C specification [8].

The following registers are needed for the operation of a TPM at I2C with locality support. For a detailed description of registers (contents, and endianness of multi-byte registers) see Section 5.5.2.1.

3440   Table 48 lists all registers of the I2C-TPM. The TPM_ACCESS register has multiple, separate and unique instances, one per locality priority level (see Table 47). All other registers alias to a single register with the locality used to determine whether accesses are permitted.

3445

Table 48 — I2C-TPM Register Overview

Address	Name	Length	Description	Master Access
TPM specific registers				
0x00	TPM_LOC_SEL	1	Selection of the locality of the current access	Read / Write
0x01 – 0x03	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x04	TPM_ACCESS	1	Used to gain ownership of the TPM for this particular locality	Read / Write
0x05 – 0x07	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x08 – 0XB	TPM_INT_ ENABLE	4	Enables specific interrupts and has the global enable	Read / Write
0x0C – 0x0F	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x10 – 0x13	TPM_INT_ STATUS	4	Shows which interrupt has occurred	Read / Write
0x14 – 0x17	TPM_INT_ CAPABILITY	4	Provides information about which interrupts this particular TPM supports	Read only
0x18 – 0x1B	TPM_STS	4	Contains general status details	Read / Write
0x1C – 0x1F	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x20	TPM_HASH_END	1	This signals the end of the hash operation. Only available when locality 4 is selected	Write only
0x21 – 0x23	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x24	TPM_DATA_FIFO	TPM_STS (burst-count)	Buffer to exchange the data for commands and responses with the HOST. For locality4 this is also aliased to TPM_HASH_DATA	Read / Write
0x25 – 0x27	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x28	TPM_HASH_START	1	This signals the start of the hash operation. Only available when locality 4 is selected[2]	Write only
0x29 –	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A

---

[2] There are two ways to access TPM_HASH_START: the first is a write of 0x04 to TPM_LOC_SEL followed by a write to TPM_HASH_START; the second is a write of 0x04 to TPM_LOC_SEL followed by a write to TPM_ACCESS.requestUse, then a write to TPM_HASH_START.

Address	Name	Length	Description	Master Access
0x2F				
0x30 – 0x33	TPM_I2C_ INTERFACE_ CAPABILITY	4	I2C Interface Capability Register	Read only
0x34 – 0x37	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x38 – 0x39	TPM_I2C_DEVICE_ ADDRESS	2	This register allows changing the I2C device address	Write only
0x3A – 0x3F	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A

Address	Name	Length	Description	Master Access
0x40	TPM_DATA_CSUM_ENABLE	1	Enables the data checksum calculation and indication via the TPM_DATA_CSUM register	Read / Write
0x41 – 0x43	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x44 – 0x45	TPM_DATA_CSUM	2	Contains the data checksum when enabled via DATA_CSUM_ENABLE	Read only
0x46 – 0x47	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A
0x48 – 0x4B	TPM_DID_VID	4	Vendor and device ID VID (bits 15:0) DID (bits 31:16)	Read only
0x4C	TPM_RID	1	Revision ID	Read only
0x4D – 0xFF	Reserved	N/A	Reads return 0xFF	N/A

7.3.5.1   TPM_LOC_SEL

This register is used to select the locality that accesses the I2C-TPM. While this register is just the indication of the locality which performs the current
3450   communication with the I2C TPM interface, it is still necessary to execute the process of getting access to the TPM via the TPM_ACCESS register to become the active locality. Or, in other words, the value in TPM_LOC_SEL may be considered to be the upper nibble of the LPC address.

For example, if locality4 wants to access the register address 0x18 the LPC address
3455   would have the value 0x4018:
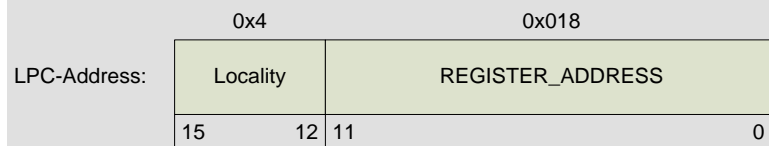
The same access on the I2C TPM effectively looks as follows:
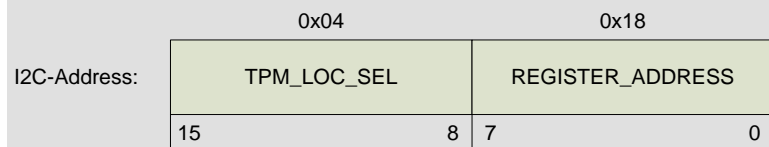
Table 49 — TPM Locality Selection Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_LOC_SEL
General Description:			Indication of the accessing Locality
Bit Descriptions:			
7:0	Read/ Write	LocalitySelection	This register is sticky. Read returns the currently accessing locality Write sets the new accessing locality See Table 47 for allowed values, default 0x00

3460

1. The I2C TPM SHALL maintain the value in this register until it gets written with a new value.

2. The I2C TPM SHALL ignore all writes to this register during a DRTM sequence, after receipt of _TPM_Hash_Start and prior to _TPM_Hash_End.

3465 7.3.5.2   TPM_ACCESS

The TPM_ACCESS register for I2C uses the same definition as that defined in Section 5.5.2.4 (Access Register).

7.3.5.3   TPM_INT_ENABLE

3470   **Table 50 — Interrupt Enable**

Abbreviation:			TPM_INT_ENABLE	
General Description:			Enables specific interrupts and has the global enable. The TPM SHALL implement this register.	
Bit Descriptions:				
31	Read/ Write	globalIntEnable	1 = Interrupts controlled by individual bits 0= All interrupts disabled (default) cleared to 0 on reset.	
30:8		Reserved	Reads always return 0	
7	Read/ Write	commandReadyEnable	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled (default)	
6:3		Reserved	Reads always return 0	
2	Read/ Write	localityChangeIntEnable	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled (default)	
1	Read/ Write	stsValidIntEnable	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled (default)	
0	Read/ Write	dataAvailIntEnable	1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled (default)	

7.3.5.4   TPM_INT_STATUS

The TPM_INT_STATUS definition is the same as that defined for LPC.   See Section5.6.1.2

7.3.5.5   TPM_INT_CAPABILITY

Table 51 — Interrupt Capability

Abbreviation:			TPM_INT_CAPABILITY
General Description:			Provides information about which interrupts this particular TPM supports. The TPM SHALL implement this register.
Bit Descriptions:			
31:8	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0
7	Read Only	commandReadyInt Support	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE.commandReadyEnable 1 = supported 0 = not supported
6:3	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0
2	Read Only	LocalityChangeIntSupport	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE.localityChangeIntEnable. 1 = supported 0 = not supported
1	Read Only	stsValidIntSupport	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE.stsValidIntEnable 1 = supported 0 = not supported
0	Read Only	dataAvailIntSupport	Corresponds to TPM_INT_ENABLE.dataAvailIntEnable. This is a mandatory interrupt. 1 = supported 0 = not allowed

7.3.5.6   TPM_STS

See Section 5.5.2.8 for a description of the state transition behavior.

3480   Reading of the burstCount may be critical when read in single bytes because the low part might change when the high part is read (and vice versa). Therefore it is strongly recommended to read the whole burstCount in one cycle.

Table 52 — Status Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_STS
General Description:			Contains general status details
Bit Descriptions:			
31:26	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0.
25	Write Only	resetEstablishmentBit	Reads always return 0. Writes (0): Ignored. Writes (1): Reset TPM_ACCESS.tpmEstablished bit if the write occurs from Locality 3 or 4.

Abbreviation:			TPM_STS	
General Description:			Contains general status details	
Bit Descriptions:				
24	Write Only	commandCancel	Reads always return 0.	
			A write of a 1 to this field after tpmGo and before dataAvail aborts the currently executing command, resulting in a response of TPM_RC_CANCELLED.	
			A write of 1 to this field after dataAvail and before tpmGo is ignored by the TPM.	
			Writes of 0 are ignored.	
23:8	Read Only	burstCount	Indicates the number of bytes that the TPM can return on reads or accept on writes.	
7	Read Only	stsValid	This field indicates that TPM_STS.dataAvail and TPM_STS.Expect contain a valid value.	
6	Read/ Write	commandReady	Read of 1 indicates TPM is ready, Write of 1 causes TPM to transition its state.	
5	Write Only	tpmGo	After software has written a command to the TPM and sees that it was received correctly, software SHALL write a 1 to this field to cause the TPM to execute that command.	
4	Read Only	dataAvail	This field indicates that the TPM has data available as a response. When set to 1, software MAY read the ReadFIFO. The TPM SHALL clear the field to 0 when it has returned all the data for the response.	
			Valid indicator: TPM_STS.stsValid = 1	
3	Read Only	Expect	The TPM sets this field to a value of 1 when it expects another byte of data for a command. It clears this field to a value of 0 when it has received all the data it expects for that command, based on the TPM size field within the packet.	
			Valid indicator: TPM_STS.stsValid = 1	
2	Read Only	selfTestDone	This field indicates that the TPM has completed all self-test actions following a TPM2_SelfTest command. Read of 0 indicates self-test is not complete. Read of 1 indicates self-test is complete	
1	Write Only	responseRetry	Software writes a 1 to this field to force the TPM to re-send the response.	
			Reads always return 0.	
0	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0.	

3485

7.3.5.7   TPM_HASH_END

See Section 4.2 for a detailed description.

7.3.5.8   TPM_DATA_FIFO

See Section 5.5.2.6 Data FIFO Register for a detailed description.

3490   ### 7.3.5.9   TPM_HASH_START

See Section 4.2 (Locality-Controlled Functions) for a detailed description.

7.3.5.10 TPM_I2C_INTERFACE_CAPABILITY

Table 53 — I2C Interface Capability Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_I2C_INTERFACE_CAPABILITY
General Description:			This register provides miscellaneous information about the interface capabilities of the I2C-TPM.
Bit Descriptions:			
31	Read Only	Reserved	Reads always return 0
30	Read Only	GUARD_TIME_Sr	Indicates whether the I2C-TPM needs a GUARD_TIME for repeated START conditions in addition to the conditions defined in Bits 20:17 of this register. 1 – GUARD_TIME needed between Last ACK/NACK to I2C repeated START 0 – No GUARD_TIME needed
29	Read Only	BurstCountStatic	Indicates whether the TPM_STS.burstCount field is dynamic or static 1 = TPM_STS.burstCount is static 0 = TPM_STS.burstCount is dynamic
I2C Device Address Change Capabilities			
28:27	Read Only	DevAdrChange	00 – Changing the I2C Device Address is not supported 01 – Changing the I2C Device Address is supported using a vendor defined mechanism 10 – Reserved (not allowed) 11 – Changing the I2C Device Address is supported using the TCG defined mechanism (see 7.3.5.15)
Locality support Capabilities			
26:25	Read Only	CapLocality	00 – This I2C TPM supports Locality 0 only. 01 – This I2C TPM supports 5 localities (0 – 4). 10 – This I2C TPM supports all localities (0 – 255). 11 – Reserved (not allowed)
I2C Bus Speed Capabilities			
24	Read Only	HsModeSupport	1 - Support for I2C High-Speed Mode (Hs-mode) 0 – I2C High-Speed Mode not supported
23	Read Only	FmPlusSupport	1 - Support for I2C Fast Mode Plus (Fm+) 0 – I2C Fast Mode Plus not supported
22	Read Only	FmSupport	1 - Support for I2C Fast Mode (Fm, mandatory) 0 – Not allowed
21	Read Only	SmSupport	1 - Support for I2C Standard Mode (Sm, mandatory) 0 – Not allowed

Abbreviation:			TPM_I2C_INTERFACE_CAPABILITY
General Description:			This register provides miscellaneous information about the interface capabilities of the I2C-TPM.
Bit Descriptions:			
GUARD_TIME Capabilities, if indicated the I2C-TPM requires a GUARD_TIME for the given condition Note: Please refer also to bit 30 in this register			
20	Read Only	Read_Read	1 – GUARD_TIME needed between 2 subsequent I2C read operations (I2C STOP to I2C START) 0 – No GUARD_TIME needed
19	Read Only	Read_Write	1 - GUARD_TIME needed between a I2C read operation and the following I2C write operation (I2C STOP to I2C START) 0 – No GUARD_TIME needed
18	Read Only	Write_Read	1 - GUARD_TIME needed between a I2C write operation and the following I2C read operation (I2C STOP to I2C START) 0 – No GUARD_TIME needed
17	Read Only	Write_Write	1 – GUARD_TIME needed between 2 subsequent I2C write operations (I2C STOP to I2C START) 0 – No GUARD_TIME needed
16:9	Read Only	GUARD_TIME	The value in this register defines the GUARD_TIME needed by the I2C TPM if indicated in the bits 20:17 of this register. A value of 0 is only allowed if all bits 20:17 are set to 0. All other values represent the GUARD_TIME in µs (e.g. 0x01 means 1 µs and 0xFA means 250 µs).

Abbreviation:			TPM_I2C_INTERFACE_CAPABILITY
General Description:			This register provides miscellaneous information about the interface capabilities of the I2C-TPM.
Bit Descriptions:			
Interface version detection			
8:7	Read Only	tpmFamily	TPM Family Identifier 00: TPM 1.2 Family 01: TPM 2.0 Family 10 – 11: Reserved
6:4	Read Only	InterfaceVersion	000: TCG I2C interface 1.0 as defined in this specification 001 – 111: Reserved
3:0	Read Only	InterfaceType	0010 – FIFO interface on I2C 0000 – Reserved – See section 5.4.2 0001 – Reserved - See section 5.4.2 1111 - Reserved – See section 5.4.2

3495   ### 7.3.5.11 TPM_DATA_CSUM_ENABLE

Table 54 — Data Checksum Enable Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_DATA_CSUM_ENABLE
General Description:			Enables the data checksum calculation and indication via the TPM_DATA_CSUM register.
Bit Descriptions:			
7:1		Reserved	Reads always return 0
0	Read/ Write	dataCSumEnable	1 = Data Checksum enabled 0 = Data Checksum disabled (default)

1. The TPM SHALL accept a write to this register after it has performed all power-on initialization (see Section 7.1.9 for details).

3500   2. The TPM SHALL accept a write to this register when it is in Idle or Ready state (see Section 5.5.2.5.1 for details).

3. The TPM MAY NOT accept a write to this register when it is in Reception, Execution or Completion state.

7.3.5.12 TPM_DATA_CSUM

3505   **Table 55 — Data Checksum Register**

Abbreviation:			TPM_DATA_CSUM
General Description:			Contains the data checksum when enabled
Bit Descriptions:			
15:0	Read only	DataChecksum	Read returns the Checksum of the entire command data at the end of the command transmission or the Checksum of the entire response data at the end of the response transmission Default: 0x00

1. The TPM SHALL use CRC-CCITT (KERMIT) for the calculation of the data checksum (see 9 for further details). The parameters are as follows:

   a. Generator polynomial is 0x1021 ($x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$)

   b. The initialization value is 0x0000

   c. Reflection of input data: TRUE

   d. Reflection of output data: TRUE

   e. Final XOR: 0x0000

   f. Test vectors:

      i. The CRC value for the ASCII string "123456789" is 0x8921. A 2-byte read from 0x44 will return Data0 (LSB) = 0x21 and Data1 (MSB) = 0x89.

      ii. The CRC value for the ASCII string "1122334455" is 0xD367. A 2-byte read from 0x44 will return Data0 (LSB) = 0x67 and Data1 (MSB) = 0xD3.

      iii. The CRC value for the HEX string 00 C1 00 00 00 0C 00 00 00 99 00 01$_{16}$ (TPM_StartUp(ST_CLEAR) is 0xFBBF. A 2-byte read from 0x44 will return Data0 (LSB) = 0xBF and Data1 (MSB) = 0xFB.

      iv. The CRC value for the HEX string 80 01 00 00 00 0C 00 00 01 44 00 00$_{16}$ (TPM2_StartUp(TPM_SU_CLEAR) is 0x6733. A 2-byte read from 0x44 will return Data0 (LSB) = 0x33 and Data1 (MSB) = 0x67.

2. If enabled via the TPM_DATA_CSUM_ENABLE register:

   a. The TPM SHALL calculate the checksum over the entire command.

   b. The TPM SHALL calculate the checksum over the entire response.

   c. The TPM SHALL update the command checksum after reception of the last command byte and before the transition of TPM_STS.Expect from 1 to 0. The I2C-TPM SHALL maintain the command checksum from the transition of TPM_STS.Expect from 1 to 0 until TPM_STS.tpmGo is set to 1.

   d. The TPM SHALL update the response checksum after the last response byte has been read and before the transition of TPM_STS.dataAvail from 1 to 0. The I2C-TPM SHALL maintain the response checksum from the transition of TPM_STS.dataAvail from 1 to 0 until Host writes a 1 to TPM_STS.commandReady.

7.3.5.13 TPM_DID_VID

See section 5.4.1.1 DID/VID Register.

7.3.5.14 TPM_RID

See section 5.4.1.2 RID Register.

7.3.5.15 TPM_I2C_DEVICE_ADDRESS

For I2C devices connected to the same bus each device must have its own unique I2C device address to avoid a bus conflict. There are 3 different possibilities:

- A device has a fixed address which can't be changed

- A device address may be configured via dedicated pins

3550 - A device address may be changed using a dedicated command or register

The I2C TPM specification defines a register mechanism to change the I2C device address in situations where the bus needs to be shared with other devices that can't be re-configured. If that is the case a simple write access to the TPM_I2C_DEVICE_ADDRESS register with the new deviceAddress and (this is 3555 recommended) the makePersistent bit set will solve such an address conflict.

There may be situations where the new deviceAddress is only needed for one power cycle. In such cases the makePersistent bit should be set to 0.

Table 56 — I2C Device Address Register

Abbreviation:			TPM_I2C_DEVICE_ADDRESS	
General Description:			This register holds the I2C device address.	
Bit Descriptions:				
15	Write only	makePersistent	1 = Persistent device address defined by bits 6:0 0= Volatile device address defined by bits 6:0, lost after reset.	
14:7		Reserved	Reads always return 0	
6:0	Write only	deviceAddress	I2C device address Reads return the current I2C device address Writes set the new I2C device address effective with the next I2C master access Default: 0x2E	

3560 ## 7.3.6   Interface Locality Usage per Register

Table 57 shows how the TPM responds to accesses to each of the interface registers based on locality settings for the FIFO interface.

Table 57 — Register Behavior Based on Locality Setting for I2C

TPM_ACCESS.activeLocality					
Set for This Locality		**Set for other Locality**		**Not Set**	
READ	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**
TPM_STS Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_ACCESS Registers					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated
TPM_DATA_FIFO Registers					
TPM returns correct data	TPM accepts data and command	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_HASH_START Register					
TPM returns 0xFF	TPM accepts command	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignore the write	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM accepts command and sets TPM_ACCESS. activeLocality for Locality 4
TPM_HASH_DATA Register					
TPM returns 0xFF	TPM accepts data	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write
TPM_HASH_END Register					
TPM returns 0xFF	TPM accepts command and clears TPM_ACCESS. activeLocality for Locality 4	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write	TPM returns 0xFF	TPM Ignores the write

TPM_ACCESS.activeLocality					
Set for This Locality		**Set for other Locality**		**Not Set**	
READ	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**	**READ**	**WRITE**
TPM_LOC_SEL Register					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated
TPM_INT_ENABLE Register					
TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	Field updated	TPM returns correct value	Field updated
TPM_INT_STATUS Register					
TPM returns correct value	Interrupt cleared	TPM returns correct value	Interrupt cleared	TPM returns correct value	Interrupt cleared
TPM_INT_CAPABILITY Register					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_I2C_INTERFACE_CAPABILITY Register					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_I2C_DEVICE_ADDRESS Register					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated
TPM_CSUM_ENABLE Register					
TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated	TPM returns correct value	Fields updated
TPM_DATA_CSUM Register					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_DID_VID Register					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register
TPM_RID Register					
TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register	TPM returns correct value	Read-only register

3565

7.3.7 TCG-I2C Protocol Usage Scenarios

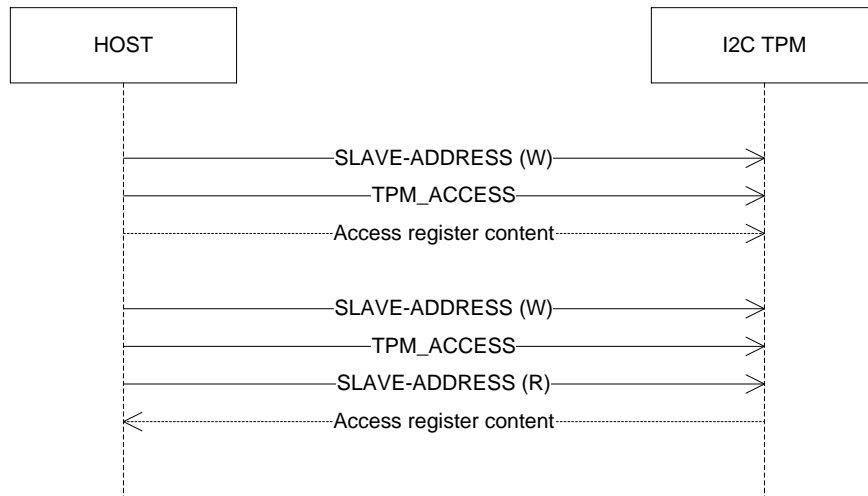### 7.3.7.1 Simple access to TPM_ACCESS

Figure 16 — Write / Read TPM_ACCESS register w/o locality selection

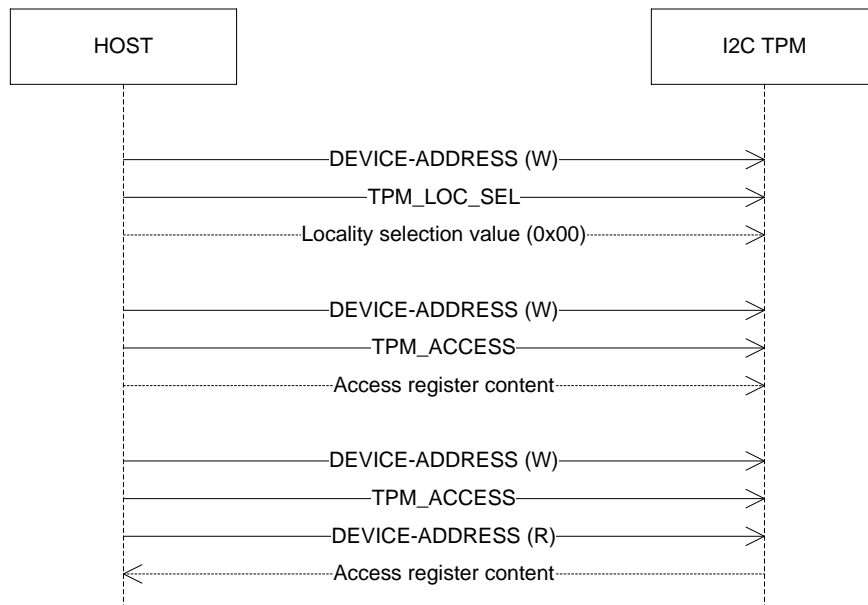3570 ### 7.3.7.2 Access to TPM_ACCESS from Locality 0 only

Figure 17 — Write / Read TPM_ACCESS register from Locality 0

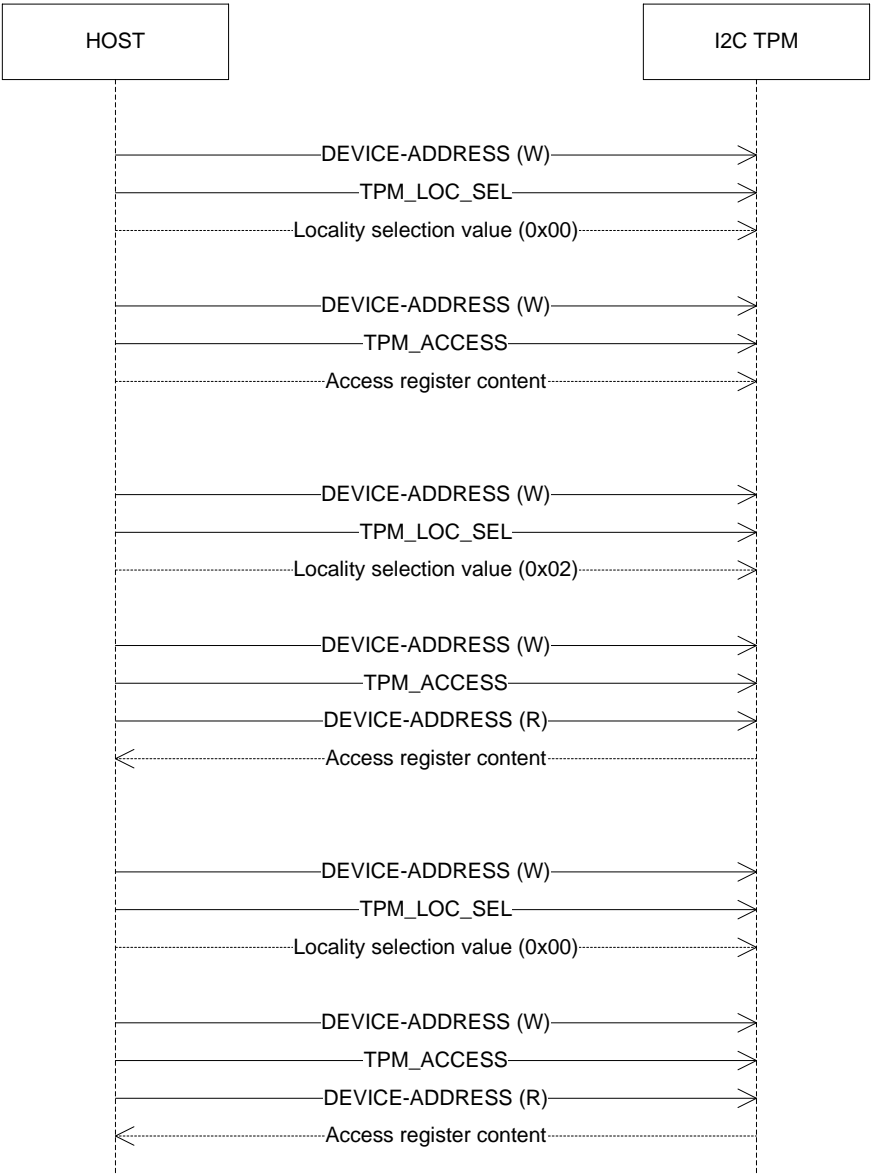### 7.3.7.3 Access to TPM_ACCESS from Locality 0 and 2

3575

Figure 18 — Write / Read TPM_ACCESS register from Locality 0 and 2
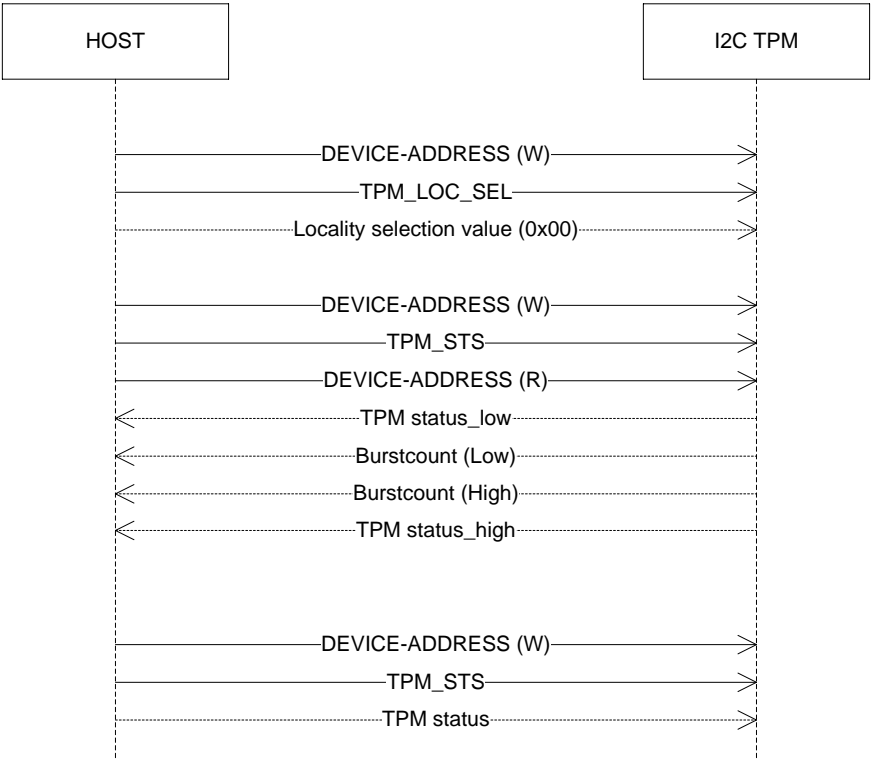
7.3.7.4   Access to TPM_STS from Locality 0

3580

Figure 19 — Read / Write TPM_STS register(s) from Locality 0

7.3.7.5 Read from TPM_DATA_FIFO from Locality 0
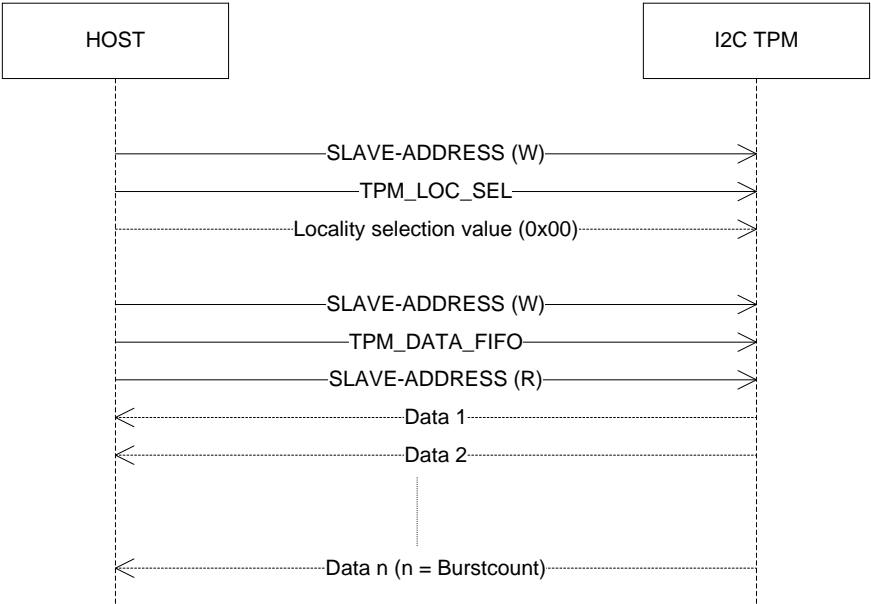

Figure 20 — Read TPM_DATA_FIFO

3585 ### 7.3.7.6 Write to TPM_DATA_FIFO from Locality 0

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017
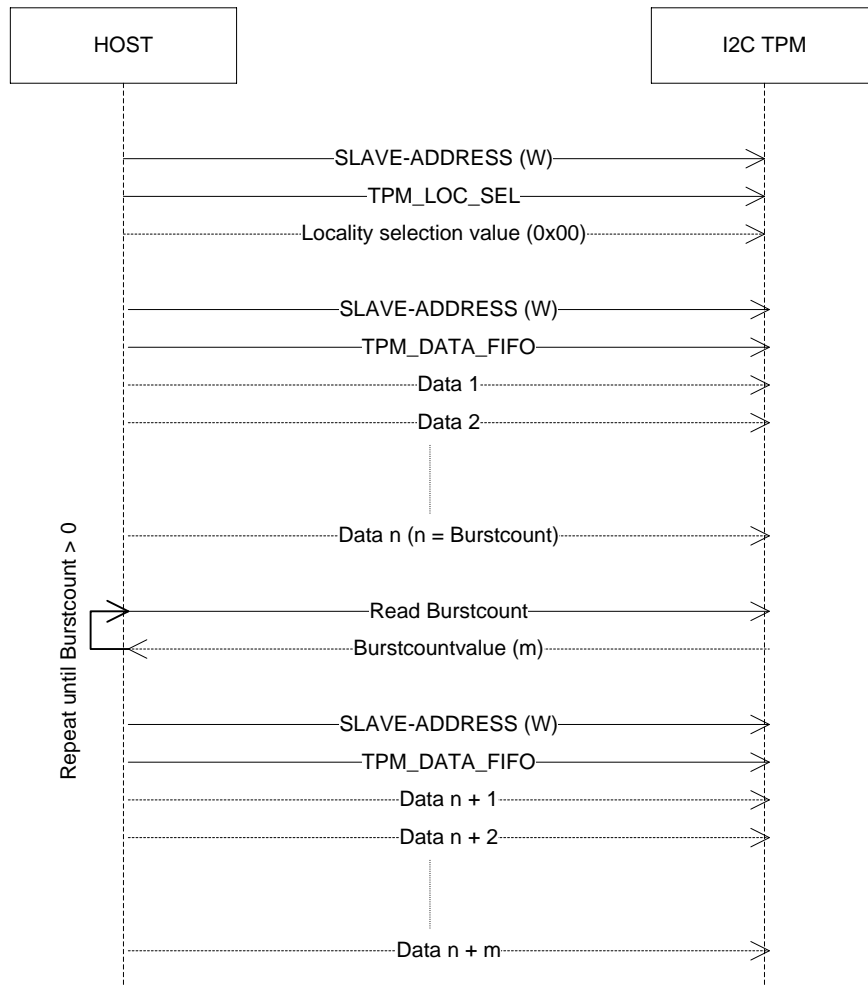
Page 171
May 22, 2017

Figure 21 — Write TPM_DATA_FIFO

3590

8   TPM Hardware Implementation

Hardware implementations of TPM as a device and in a PC Client platform require the careful consideration of some key elements. This section provides guidance for the TPM vendor's hardware implementation of the TPM and for the motherboard
3595   manufacturers designing the TPM into a PC Client platform. Section 8.1 TPM Packaging is targeted at TPM vendors, providing for a standardized package and pin-out that allows for form and fit compatibility across multiple TPM vendors, providing the greatest design flexibility for both TPM vendors and motherboard manufacturers. Section 8.2 Hardware Implementation of a TPM in a PC Client Platform is targeted at
3600   motherboard manufacturers, providing a collection of the critical hardware elements necessary to implement the TPM in a PC Client system.

8.1   TPM Packaging

A standard package allows TPM and motherboard manufacturers the convenience and cost savings of not having to define from scratch the packaging and pin-out for a TPM.
3605   This packaging and pin-out recommendation is provided as a convenience for either an end product or as a basis for extension or modification. It is recognized that individual environments may dictate other schemes; therefore, implementation of this section is optional and any deviance will not detract from a platform's claim to adherence to this specification.

3610

1. In order to claim compliance to this section of this specification, the TPM SHALL use both the packaging and pin out as defined in this section:

   a. It SHALL be said to use the "Packaging as specified in the *TPM Packaging* Section of the TCG PC Client Specific Platform TPM Profile for TPM 2.0 (PTP)".

3615   b. It SHALL be designed using one of the following packages:

      i. A 28-pin TSSOP using 9.6 mm plastic length (with 0.65 mm lead pitch) by 6.1 mm or 4.4 mm plastic width.

      ii. A 32-pin QFN using 5mm width x 5mm length.

2. If a TPM does not use either the packaging or pin out specified in this section:

3620   a. It SHALL NOT claim compliance to this section of this specification.

   b. The TPM manufacturer SHALL provide documentation to the platform manufacturer regarding the package and pin out, including the GPIO-Express-00 pin's electrical characteristics.

GPIO/SM_DAT/I2C_SDA	1	28	LPCPD#
GPIO/SM_CLK/I2C_SCL	2	27	SIRQ
VNC	3	26	LAD0/MISO
GND	4	25	GND
VSB	5	24	VDD
GPIO-Express-00	6	23	LAD1/MOSI
PP/GPIO	7	22	LFRAME#/SPI_CS#
TestI	8	21	LCLK/SPI_CLK
TestBI/BADD/GPIO	9	20	LAD2/SPI_PIRQ#/I2C_PIRQ#
VDD	10	19	VDD
GND	11	18	GND
VBAT	12	17	LAD3
xtalI/32k in	13	16	LRESET#/SPI_RST#
xtalO	14	15	CLKRUN#/GPIO/I2C_PIRQ#

3625 **Figure 22 – TPM Combo TSSOP-28 Pin Out**
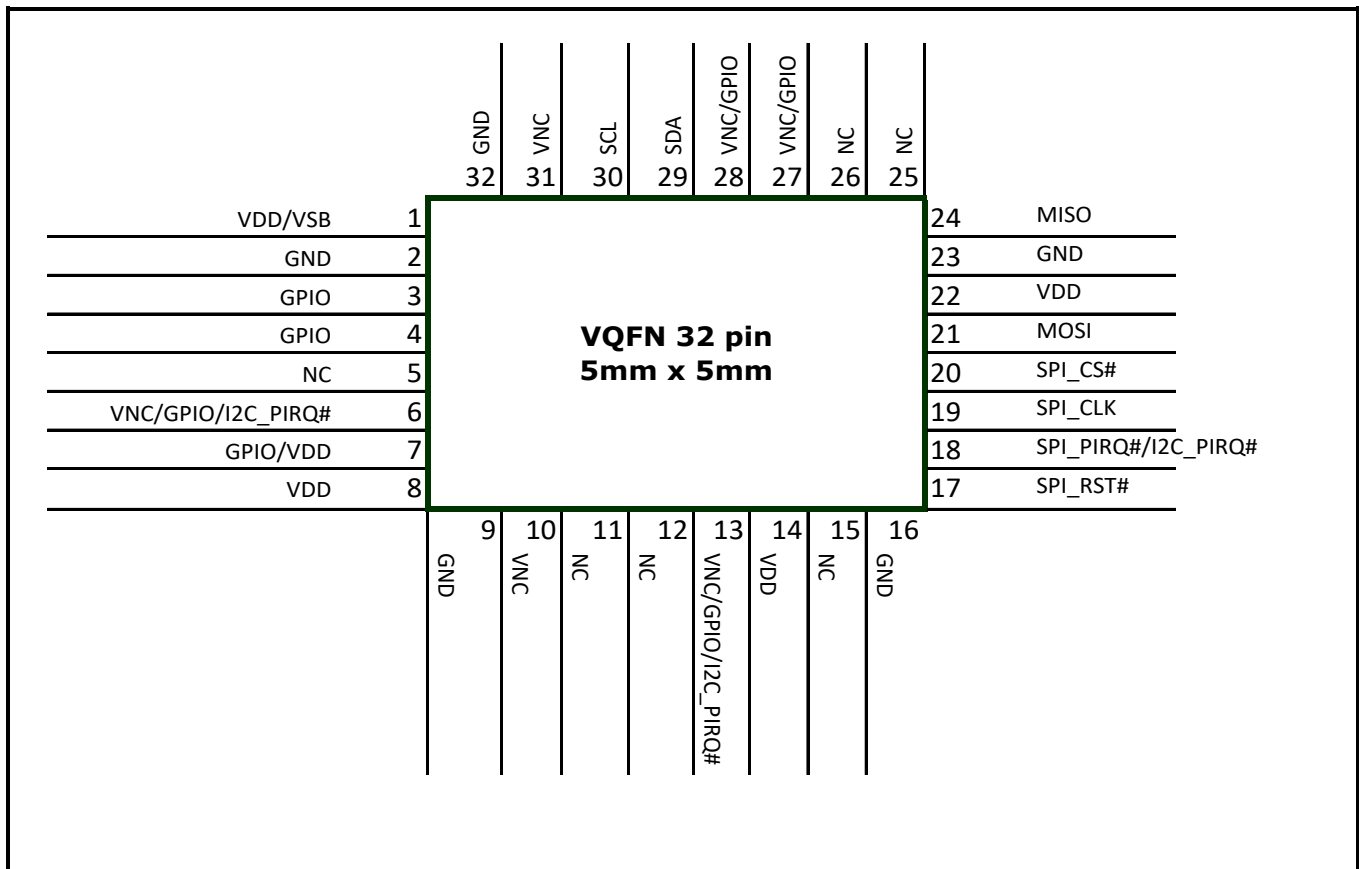
Figure 23 —TPM SPI QFN-32 Pin out

3. Using the pin-out defined in Figure 22 TPM Combo TSSOP 28 Pin Out, the pins SHALL be assigned as defined in Table 58. Using the pin-out defined in Figure 23, the pins SHALL be assigned as defined in Table 60.

3630   4. For SPI and I2C, the TPM Packaging SHALL be implemented with a PIRQ# pin in one of the pins indicated in Tables 58, 59 and 60. It SHALL NOT be implemented in more than one pin.

The pins which are marked "M" for "mandatory" in Table 58 and Table 60 are required to be implemented. Those which are marked "O" for "optional" are not required for
3635   claims of adherence, but if implemented, must be implemented per Table 58 and Table 60.

Table 58 — TSSOP-28 Pin Assignments

Signal	Pin(s)	Type	Description	LPC pin-assignments	SPI pin-assignments
LAD3	17	BI	As defined in the LPC Interface Specification	M	O
LAD2/SPI_PIRQ#	20	BI/O	LAD 2: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification SPI_PIRQ#: SPI Interrupt, active low, open collector	LAD2 – M	PIRQ#-M
LAD1/MOSI	23	BI	LAD1: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification MOSI: As defined in Section 6.4 SPI Hardware Protocol	M	MOSI-M
LAD0/MISO	26	BI	LAD0: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification	M	MISO-M
LPCPD#	28	I	Implementation of this pin SHALL allow for the pin to be strapped HIGH.	O	O
LCLK/SPI_CLK	21	I	LCLK: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification. SPI_CLK: As defined in Section 6.4.1 Clocking	LCLK-M	SPI_CLK-M
LFRAME#/SPI_CS#	22	I	LFRAME#: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification SPI_CS#: As defined in Section 6.4 SPI Hardware Protocol	LFRAME-M	SPI_CS#-M
LRESET#/SPI_RST#	16	I	LRESET#: As defined in the LPC Interface Specification SPI_RST#: Active Low	LRESET#-M	SPI_RST#-M
SERIRQ	27	BI	As defined in the LPC Interface Specification	M	O
CLKRUN#/GPIO	15	BI	Same as PCI CLKRUN#. Active Low, internal pull-down. Only needed by peripherals that need DMA or bus mastering in a system that can stop the PCI bus (generally mobile devices). Implementation of CLKRUN# is TPM and chipset vendor specific GPIO will default to low.	O	O
PP/GPIO	7	I,BI	Physical Presence, active high, internal pull-down. Used to indicate Physical Presence to the TPM. GPIO will default to low	O	O
XTALI/32k in	13	I	32 kHz crystal input or 32 kHz clock input	O	O
XTALO	14	O	32 kHz crystal output	O	O
GPIO/SM_CLK	2	BI	Defaults as a GPIO. GPIO will default high. Also used as System Management Bus (SMB) Clock signal	O	O

Signal	Pin(s)	Type	Description	LPC pin-assignments	SPI pin-assignments
GPIO/SM_DAT	1	BI	Defaults as a GPIO. GPIO will default high Also used as System Management Bus (SMB) Data signal.	O	O
GPIO-Express-00	6	BI	GPIO assigned to TPM_NV_INDEX_GPIO_00, internal pull-up Open-Collector output (when configured as output).	O	O
VNC	3		Vendor-controlled No Connect. This pin will be defined by the TPM vendor or can be a GPIO. There is no defined default state for this signal.	O	O
TESTI	8	I	This pin will be pulled low on the motherboard. Pull high to enable Test mode. Pull low to disable Test mode and enable GPIO/BADD on pin 9(TESTBI).	O	O
TESTBI/ BADD/GPIO	9	I/O	TESTBI: Test port. Internal pull-up If TESTI is pulled low, TESTBI acts as a GPIO and (optionally) BADD. GPIO will default high. BADD (optional, defaults high, use external pull-down to signal "low") can be used to select the legacy I/O base address. This logic is manufacturer specific, as well as the selected addresses. Setting is read at Startup.	O	O
Power					
VDD	10, 19 24	I	This is either a 3.3 volt or 1.8V DC power rail supplied by the motherboard to the module. The maximum power for this interface is 250 mA. Available from S0-S2.	M	M
GND	4, 11, 18, 25	I	Zero volts. Expected to be connected to main motherboard ground.	M	M
VBAT	12	I	Battery input, may be 3.3V. Available from S0-S5 and in G3 state.	O	O
VSB	5	I	Standby DC power rail, may be 3.3V or 1.8V. Available from S0-S5.	O	O

Family "2.0"
Level 00 Revision 01.03 v22

TCG PUBLISHED
Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2017

Page 177
May 22, 2017

Table 59 TSSOP 28 I2C Pin Assignments

Signal	Pin(s)	Type	Description	I2C Pin assignment
GPIO/I2C_PIRQ#	20	BI/O	I2C_PIRQ#: Optional location for I2C PIRQ#, active low, open drain. Note: I2C interrupt must be present on either this pin or pin 15.	O[3]
GPIO	6, 7, 9	I/O	GPIO will default high.	O
I2C_SCL	2	BI	I2C SCL signal; open drain	M
I2C_SDA	1	BI	I2C SDA signal; open drain	M
I2C_PIRQ#	15	BI	I2C_PIRQ#: Optional location for I2C PIRQ#, active low, open drain. Note: I2C interrupt must be present on either this pin or pin 20.	O[2]
VNC	3, 8, 13, 14, 16, 17, 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28		Vendor-controlled No Connect. This pin will be defined by the TPM vendor or can be a GPIO. There is no defined default state for this signal.	O
Power				
VDD	10, 19, 24	I	This is either a 3.3 volt or 1.8V DC power rail supplied by the motherboard to the module. The maximum power for this interface is 250 mA. Available from S0-S2.	M
GND	4, 11,18, 25	I	Zero volts. Expected to be connected to main motherboard ground.	M
VBAT	12	I	Battery input, may be 3.3V. Available from S0-S5 and in G3 state.	O
VSB	5	I	Standby DC power rail, may be 3.3V or 1.8V. Available from S0-S5.	O

3640

---

[3] Depending on the TPM implementation, the I2C_PIRQ# pin will either be located on Pin 15 or Pin 20, not both. See TPM vendor's datasheet.

Table 60 — QFN-32 Pin Assignments

Signal	Pin(s)	Type	Description	Pin-assignments
SPI_PIRQ#/I2C_PIRQ#	18	BI/O	PIRQ#: SPI Interrupt, active low, open collector, I2C_PIRQ#: Optional location for I2C PIRQ#, active low, open drain. Note: I2C interrupt must be present on either this pin or pin 6.	M-SPI O-I2C[4]
SPI_CLK	19	I	SPI_CLK: As defined in Section 6.4.1 Clocking	M
SPI_CS#	20	I	SPI_CS#: As defined in Section 6.4 SPI Hardware Protocol	M
SPI_RST#	17	I	SPI_RST#: Active Low	M
GPIO	3, 4	BI	GPIO defaults to low.	O
VNC/GPIO/I2C_PIRQ#	6	BI/O	I2C_PIRQ#: Optional location for I2C PIRQ#, active low, open drain. Note: I2C interrupt must be present on either this pin or pin 18.	O-I2C[2]
VNC/GPIO/I2C_PIRQ#	13	BI/O	I2C_PIRQ#: Optional location for I2C PIRQ#, active low, open drain. Note: I2C interrupt must be present on either this pin or pin 18.	O-I2C[2]
VNC/GPIO	27, 28	I,BI	Vendor defined no-connect. GPIO will default to low	O
MOSI	21	BI	MOSI – As defined in Section 6.4 SPI Hardware Protocol	M
MISO	24	BI	MISO – As defined in Section 6.4 SPI Hardware Protocol	M
SDA	29	I/O	I2C Data pin, as defined in Section 7.1.7 Pull-up Resistors. If implemented SCL must also be implemented.	O
SCL	30	I/O	I2C Clock pin, as defined in Section 7.1.7 Pull-up Resistors. If implemented SDA must also be implemented.	O
VNC	10, 31		Vendor-controlled No Connect. This pin will be defined by the TPM vendor or can be a GPIO. There is no defined default state for this signal.	O
Power				
VDD	14, 22	I	This is a either a 3.3 volt or 1.8 volt DC power rail supplied by the motherboard to the	M

---

[4] Depending on the TPM implementation, the I2C_PIRQ# pin will either be located on Pin 6 or Pin 18, not both. See TPM vendor's datasheet.

Signal	Pin(s)	Type	Description	Pin-assignments
			module. The maximum power for this interface is 250 mA. Available from S0-S2.	
VDD/VSB	1	I	This is a either a 3.3 volt or 1.8 volt DC power rail supplied by the motherboard to the module. The maximum power for this interface is 250 mA. Available from S0-S2. If defined as VSB, this is a 3.3V supply.	M
GND	2, 9, 16, 23, 32	I	Zero volts. Expected to be connected to main motherboard ground.	M
NC	5, 11, 12, 15, 25, 26, 27, 28		No connect	O
GPIO/Power	7	I	GPIO defaults to low, e.g. Physical Presence Power is vendor defined	O

8.2   Hardware Implementation of a TPM in a PC Client Platform

3645

The TPM in the PC Client platform serves as part of the Root of Trust. As such, the hardware implementation of the TPM on the motherboard has to account for how the TPM is connected to the other components of the platform which form the trust chain, such as the CPU. It is important that the TPM reset, clock and power signals support the TPM's function as the RTM and RTR and cannot be easily circumvented. Motherboard manufacturers should take care to ensure that the physical connections and routing minimize the possibility of attacking the S-CRTM and DRTM.

3650

1. The _TPM_INIT (LRESET#/SPI_RST#) signal SHALL be connected to the platform CPU Reset signal such that it complies with the requirements specified in Section 1.2.7 HOST Platform Reset in the PC Client Implementation Specification for Conventional BIOS.

3655

2. The TPM's main power pins (VDD) SHALL be connected such that the TPM is powered during ACPI states S0-S2 and MAY be powered in S3-S5.

3. If a TPM implements the optional VBAT and/or VSB pins, the pins MAY be connected to a battery or auxiliary power source. The motherboard manufacturer SHOULD consult their TPM documentation.

3660

4. If a LPC TPM is implemented using the recommended packaging in Table 58, the TPM's LPC bus SHALL be connected as defined in the LPC Specification, except as follows:

   a. If the LPCPD# power down protocol is not implemented in both the chipset and the TPM, the LPCPD# pin on the TPM SHALL be strapped HIGH.

3665

   b. If the LPCPD# power down protocol is implemented in both the chipset and the TPM, the LPCPD# pin MAY be strapped HIGH.

   c. CLKRUN# MAY be strapped HIGH to disable the TPM's CLKRUN# protocol.

   Note: If the TPM does not implement a pin for CLKRUN#, it is assumed to support the host disabling the LPC clock without changing the TPM state.

3670   5. If an SPI TPM is implemented using the recommended packaging as defined in Figure 23 and Table 60, the TPM's SPI bus SHALL be connected so that:

   a. The TPM has a dedicated chip select (SPI_CS#).

   b. The TPM's SPI_RST# is connected directly to the platform's RST#, so that it cannot be controlled independently of the south bridge asserting CPU_RST#.

3675   6. An SPI TPM SHALL be implemented in a platform such that is only accessed, via asserting SPI_CS#, if an MMIO access to 0xFED4xxxx is received by the chipset.

   Note: Locality 4 accesses to the hardware hash registers may be accessed via an implementation specific mechanism other than MMIO, but these accesses still obey this rule by virtue of being in the TPM's address range.

3680   7. The Platform SHALL provide a hardware mechanism, e.g. a hardware-based strap, to configure the platform's TPM and chipset to support the SPI interface.

8.2.1   SPI Platform Design Notes

This section provides guidelines for platform OEM's and ISV's to aid in the design of platforms and software using an SPI TPM. The following sections are informative only, 3685   as they describe recommended behavior.

8.2.2   SW Interface to SPI-TPM

The SPI interface has been architected to be transparent to the driver and application layers in a TPM-enabled software stack. There are some SPI properties which will produce different results than LPC in cases where software does not follow good design 3690   practice. In these cases, this specification addresses the TPM requirements so that none of the TPM's security is impacted by bad software design, at the risk of a potentially poor user experience. As such, software and drivers should follow these recommendations to ensure a robust implementation.

- SW should continue to use the memory mapped 0xFED4_xxxx address range to 3695   access the SPI-TPM.

   Note: This is the same address range as for the LPC-TPM.

- All existing LPC-TPM code will continue to work as is with the SPI-TPM

- SW which uses legacy LPC cycles to the TPM will not work with an SPI TPM.

- The SPI TPM has added an extended data FIFO for larger data transfers. Software 3700   may or may not use this new register.

Software should continue to use the existing protocols for accessing the TPM as described in Sections 5.5.2.4 and 5.5.2.5.

8.2.3   SW Command Interface to SPI-TPM

Many platforms support FLASH components on SPI by allowing SW to program a 3705   command-based interface. SW sets up specific commands such as block write, erase, etc. through some platform dependent set of registers.

3710

Note: some platforms may choose to not have a TPM as part of the platform, or continue to use the LPC-TPM. Those platforms may use the SPI-TPM CS# for additional FLASH space or some other usage. In that case the command-based accesses may be allowed. The mechanism to determine whether the CS# is attached to a TPM must not be SW dependent but should be some HW mechanism fixed by the OEM at manufacturing.

9   References

1. The Trusted Computing Group: http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org

2. Low Pin Count (LPC) Interface Specification: http://www.intel.com/design/chipsets/industry/lpc.htm

3. PC Specific Implementation Specification: http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org/developers/pc_client/specifications

4. System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification Version 2.0:
http://www.smbus.org

5. PCI Express Electromechanical Specifications: http://www.pcisig.com

6. The Serial IRQ (SERIRQ) protocol definition: http://www.smsc.com/ftpdocs/papers.html

7. TPM Library Specification:
http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org/developers/trusted_platform_module/specifications

8. I2C-Bus specification and user manual, Rev. 6, 2014-04-04, NXP

9. I2C CRC calculator reference: http://reveng.sourceforge.net/